

Historia Brittōnum
The History of the Britons
A Latin Reader

Compiled by Aaron Decker

*Hic liber est dēdicātus discipulīs meīs
in classe Latīnae III
in annō scholasticō 2025-2026.*

Copyright ©2025 Aaron Decker
All Rights Reserved
ISBN: 9798290341934
Imprint: Independently published
decker49@gmail.com

Intrōductiō

This is a Latin reader edition of the *Historia Brittōnum*, often attributed to Nennius, a Welsh monk in the ninth century. It was written around 831 AD and contains interesting accounts of kings and saints and marvels found in the British Isles.

This reader edition was produced to meet the following goals:

- to make an inexpensive print copy of the *Historia Brittōnum* publicly available.
- to provide a legible (not photo-copied) text with macrons.
- to provide glossaries so that a Latin learner could read through this work without needing to consult additional books or dictionaries.
- to provide footnotes glossing the more difficult or unclear sentences and to provide additional commentary.

Approximate statistics regarding the text:

1823 unique lexical forms, 9139 words total.

Average sentence length: 18.4 words.

This reader edition of the *Historia Brittōnum* is not a critical edition of the text; for that, please consult Mommsen's work which is cited in the bibliography. Additionally, I am not an expert on the Welsh language or British history; therefore I apologize in advance for anything I may have overlooked in the identification of place-names. Furthermore, the numbers and calculations contained in the text often have many textual variants presented in Mommsen's critical text. This will not be of concern to most readers, but those who want precision in the dates should consult Mommsen's text. The glosses provided in the footnotes are intentionally woodenly literal; their purpose is to aid the reader in understanding the Latin, not to provide an idiomatic English translation.

The *Historia Brittōnum* appears from its form to be a compilation of other sources. Additionally, some facts related (such as a Pope named Eucharistus in section 21) are not corroborated by any other source and are likely in error or have missing context.

An additional source cited in the footnotes and glossaries is *Nennius Interpretātus*. This is a modern translation into Latin of a medieval Irish-language version of the *Historia Brittōnum*, and can also be found in Mommsen's text. This provides additional insight into how a medieval reader interpreted the text.

Fīnis intrōductiōnis. Incipit textus Historiae Brittōnum.

I. Dē Sex Aetātibus Mundī

1 Ā prīncipiō mundī usque ad dīluvium annī 2,042.

Ā dīluviō usque ad Abraham annī 942.

Ab Abraham usque ad Moysēn annī 640.

Ā Moyse usque ad Dāvīd annī 500.

2 Ā Dāvīd usque Nabuchodonosor annī sunt 569.

Ab Adam usque trāsmigrātiōnem Babylōniae annī sunt 4,879.

3 Ā trāsmigrātiōne Babylōniae usque ad Chrīstum 566.

Ab Adam vērō usque ad passiōnem Chrīstī annī sunt 5,228.

4 Ā passiōne autem Chrīstī perāctī sunt annī 796.

Ab incarnātiōne autem eius annī sunt 831¹.

5 Prīma igitur aetās mundī ab Adam usque ad Noe.

Secunda ā Noe usque ad Abraham.

Tertia ab Abraham usque ad Dāvīd.

6 Quārta ā Dāvīd usque ad Daniēlem.

Quīnta ā Daniēle usque ad Iōhannem Baptistam.

Sexta ā Iōhanne usque ad iūdicium, in quō dominus noster Iēsus Chrīstus veniet

iūdicāre vīvōs ac mortuōs et saeculum per ignem.

¹*From His incarnation therefore are 831 years.* This conveniently dates this text as having been composed in 831 AD.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Abraham: Abraham, the Old Testament patriarch
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Adam: Adam, the first man
 aetās: age; singular feminine nominative from aetās, aetātis
 aetātibus: ages; plural feminine ablative from aetās, aetātis
 annī: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, anni
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Babylōniae: Babylon; singular feminine genitive from Babylōnia, Babylōniae
 Baptistam: baptist; singular masculine accusative from baptista, baptistae
 Christi: of Christ; singular masculine genitive from Chrīstus, Chrīstī
 Chrīstum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Chrīstus, Chrīstī
 Chrīstus: Christ; singular masculine nominative from Chrīstus, Chrīstī
 Dāniēle: Daniel; singular masculine ablative from Dāniēl, Dāniēlis
 Dāniēlem: Daniel; singular masculine accusative from Dāniēl, Dāniēlis
 David: David, the king of Israel that slew Goliath.
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diluviō: flood, destruction; singular neuter ablative from diluvium, diluvii
 diluvium: flood, destruction; singular neuter nominative from diluvium, diluvii
 dominus: lord, master; singular masculine nominative from dominus, domini
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 Iēsūs: Jesus; singular masculine nominative from Jēsūs, Jēsū
 igitur: therefore
 ignem: fire; singular masculine accusative from ignis, ignis
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incarnatiōne: incarnation; singular feminine ablative from incarnatiō, incarnatiōnis
 Iohanne: John the Baptist
 Iohannem: John the Baptist (accusative)
 iūdicāre: to judge; present active infinitive from iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvi, iūdicātus
 iūdicium: judgement; plural masculine genitive from iūdex, iūdicis
 mortuōs: dead; plural masculine accusative from mortuus, mortua, mortuum
 Moyse: Moses; singular masculine vocative from Moyses, Moysis
 Moysen: Moses; singular masculine accusative from Moyses, Moysis
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 Nabuchodonosor: Nebuchadnezzar (reigned 605-562 BC), the Babylonian king mentioned in Daniel
 Noe: Noah, who repopulated the earth after the Flood
 noster: our; singular masculine nominative from noster, nostra, nostrum
 passiōne: suffering, passion; singular feminine ablative from passiō, passiōnis
 passiōnem: suffering, passion; singular feminine accusative from passiō, passiōnis
 per: through
 perāctī: perāctī sunt = they were carried through; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctus
 prīma: first; singular feminine nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīmum
 prīncipiō: beginning, origin; singular neuter dative from principium, principii
 quarta: fourth; singular feminine nominative from quattuor, quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quinta: fifth
 quō: which; singular ablative of quis
 saeculum: world, age, generation; singular neuter nominative from saeculum, saeculi
 secunda: second; singular feminine nominative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, bini -ae -a, bis
 sex: six
 sexta: sixth
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 tertia: third; singular feminine nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trāsmigratiōne: transmigration; singular feminine ablative from trāsmigratiō, trāsmigratiōnis
 trāsmigratiōnem: transmigration; singular feminine accusative from trāsmigratiō, trāsmigratiōnis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until

veniet: he will come; 3rd person singular future active from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 vīvōs: those alive; plural masculine accusative from vīvus, vīva, vīvum

II. Historia Brittōnum

7 Britannia īnsula ā quōdam Brūtō cōnsule Rōmānō dicta¹. Haec cōnsurgit² ab āfricō boreālī ad occidentem versus: 800 in longitūdine milium, 200 in lātītūdine spatium habet. In eā sunt vīgintī octo cīvitatēs et innumerābilia prōmontoria cum innumerīs castellīs ex lapidibus et latere fabricātīs et in eā habitant quattuor gentēs: Scottī, Pictī, Saxonēs, atque Brittōnēs.

8 Trēs magnās īnsulās habet, quārum ūna vergit contrā Armoriācās et vocātur īnsula Gueith: secunda sita est in umbilicō maris inter Hiberniam et Britanniam et vocātur nōmen eius Euboniā, id est Manau: alia sita est in extrēmō līmite orbis Britanniae ultrā Pictōs et vocātur Orc. Sīc in prōverbiō antīquō dīcitur, quandō³ dē iūdicibus vel rēgibus sermō fit: 'iūdicāvit Britanniam cum tribus īnsulīs'.

¹*The island Britain is named after a certain Roman consul (named) Brutus.*

²*This (the island) rises up from the southwest to the west and to the north(most point) has 800 miles of height and 200 miles of width. Āfricō derives its meaning from the southwest wind that blows off the coast of Africa. The distances given correspond well with what is observed on a modern map.*

³*When it is said of judges or kings: 'he ruled Britain (along) with the three islands'.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 āfricō: southwest; singular masculine ablative from āfricus, āfrici
 alia: other; singular feminine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 antiquō: ancient; singular masculine ablative from antiquus, antiqua -um, antiquior -or -us, antiquissimus -a -um
 Armoriācas: The Amoriacas, a region of northern Gaul that includes the Brittany Peninsula
 atque: and
 boreāli: north, northern; singular ablative or dative from boreālis, boreālis, boreāle
 Brittannia: Britain
 Brittanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine ablative from Brūtus, Brūti
 castellis: castles, strongholds; plural neuter ablative from castellum, castelli
 civitātēs: cities; plural feminine nominative from civitās, civitātis
 cōnsule: consul; singular masculine ablative from cōsul, cōsulis
 cōnsurgit: it rises up; 3rd person singular present active from cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrexī, cōnsurrectus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dictā: having been said; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 eā: it; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 Euboniā: The Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland.
 ex: out of, from
 extrēmō: limit, outside, end; singular masculine ablative from extremus, extremi
 fabricātis: having been made; plural ablative past passive participle from fabricō, fabricāre, fabricāvī, fabricātus
 fit: is made; 3rd person singular present active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine nominative from gēns, gentis
 Gueith: The Isle of Wight, an island just off the southern coast of Great Britain in the English channel. The name Gueith is from Old Welsh.
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeo, habere, habuī, habitus
 habitant: they inhabit; 3rd person plural present active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia, Hiberniae
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 innumerābilia: countless; plural neuter nominative from innumerābilis, innumerābilis, innumerābile
 innumeris: countless; plural ablative from innumerus, innumera, innumera
 īnsula: island; singular feminine nominative from īnsula, īnsulae
 īnsulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from īnsula, īnsulae
 īnsulīs: islands; plural feminine ablative from īnsula, īnsulae
 inter: between, among, during
 iūdicāvit: he judged, he ruled; 3rd person singular perfect active from iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātum
 iūdicibus: judges; plural masculine ablative from iūdex, iūdicis
 lapidibus: stones; plural masculine ablative from lapis, lapidis
 latere: brick; singular masculine ablative from later, lateris
 lātitudine: breadth, width, latitude; singular feminine ablative from lātitudō, lātitudinis
 limite: limit; singular masculine ablative from limes, limitis
 longitudine: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from longitūdō, longitūdinis
 māgnās: large; plural feminine accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Manau: The Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland.
 maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
 milium: of miles; plural neuter genitive mille, mille
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 occidentem: west; singular masculine accusative from occidēs, occidentis
 octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
 orbis: realm, orbit; singular masculine genitive from orbis, orbis
 Orc: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of Scotland
 Picti: Picts, a Scottish tribe; plural masculine nominative
 Pictōs: Picts, a Scottish tribe; plural masculine accusative
 prōmontoria: promontories, peaks, headlands, capes; plural neuter nominative from promontorium, promontoriū
 prōverbiō: proverb; singular neuter ablative from proverbium, proverbii
 quāndō: when, because
 quārum: what; plural female genitive from qui
 quattuor: 4
 quōdam: by a certain; singular masculine ablative from quidam
 rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 Rōmānō: Roman; singular masculine ablative from Rōmānūs, Rōmānā, Rōmānūm
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 secunda: second; singular feminine nominative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, binī -ae -a, bis
 sermō: discussion, conversation, speech; singular masculine nominative from sermō, sermōnis
 sīc: thus
 sita: sita est = is located; idiomatic usage of past passive participle of sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs
 spatium: space; singular neuter nominative from spatium, spatii
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ultrā: beyond
 umbilicō: center, middle; singular masculine ablative from umbilicus, umbilici
 ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 vel: or
 vergit: it lies
 versus: towards, facing (adverb)
 vīginti: 20
 vocātur: to be called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

9 Sunt in eā multa flūmina, quae cōfluunt ad omnēs partēs, id est ad orientem, ad occidentem, ad merīdiem, ad septentriōnem, sed tamen duo flūmina praeclāriōra¹ cēterīs flūminibus Tamesis ac Sabrīnae quasi duo brachia Britanniae, per quae ōlim ratēs vehēbantur ad portandās dīvitiās prō causā negōtiātiōnis. Brittōnēs ōlim implentēs² eam ā marī usque ad mare iūdicāvērunt.

10 Sī quis scīre voluerit, quō tempore post dīluvium habitāta est haec īnsula, hoc experīmentum³ bifāriē invēnī.

In annālibus autem Rōmānōrum sīc scrīptum est. Aenēās post Troiānum bellum cum Ascaniō filiō suō vēnit ad Ītaliā et superātō Turnō accēpit Lāvīniam filiam Latīnī filiī Faunī, filiī Pīcī, filiī Sātūrnī in coniugium et post mortem Latīnī rēgnum obtinuit Rōmānōrum vel Latīnōrum. Aenēās autem Albam condidit et posteā uxōrem dūxit et peperit eī filium nōmine Silvium.

¹*But however two rivers (are) more famous than the other rivers, the Thames and the Severn, like two arms of Britain, through which once rafts were sailed to carry riches for the reason of (conducting) business.*

²*The Britons ruled once upon a time, filling her (Britain) from sea to sea.*

³*This can be found (or explained) in two ways.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 accēpit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aeneas: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus
 Albam: Alba Longa, a city founded by Aeneas (accusative case)
 annālibus: annals, chronicles; plural masculine ablative from annālis, annālis
 Ascaniō: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative case)
 autem: but, however, moreover
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter accusative from bellum, belli
 bifariē: in two ways, variant spelling of bifariam
 brachia: forearms, branches; plural neuter nominative from brachium, brachiū
 Britanniae: Britain; singular feminine genitive from Britannia, Britanniae
 Brittonēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 causa: cause, reason; singular feminine nominative from causa, causae
 cēteris: the others; plural dative from cēterus, cētera, cēterum
 clāriōra: clearer; plural neuter nominative from clārus, clāra -um, clārior -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 condidit: he founded, he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
 cōnfluunt: they flow together; 3rd person plural present active from cōnfluō, cōnfluere, cōnflūxi, cōnfluxus
 coniugium: marriage; plural neuter accusative from coniugium, coniugii
 cum: with
 diluvium: flood, specifically Noah's flood; singular neuter accusative from diluvium, diluviū
 divitiās: riches, wealth; plural feminine accusative from divitia, divitiae
 duo: two
 dūxit: he lead; infinitive
 eā: in it; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
 eam: it; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 ei: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 experimentum: experience; singular neuter accusative from experimentum, experimenti
 Faunī: king of the Latins, father of Latinus; singular masculine genitive from Faunus, Fauni
 filiam: daughter; singular feminine accusative from filia, filiae
 filiī: sons; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filiō: son; singular masculine ablative from filius, fili
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 flūmina: rivers; plural neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūminibus: rivers; plural neuter ablative from flūmen, flūminis
 habitāta: habitāta est = it was inhabited; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 id: it
 implentēs: filling up; plural common nominative present participle from impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insula: island; singular feminine nominative from insula, insulae
 invēni: I found; 2nd person singular present active imperative from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 Itāliam: Italy (accusative case)
 iūdicāverunt: they ruled; 3rd person plural perfect active from iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus
 Latini: Latin; of Latinus, the king of the Latins who gave his daughter Lavinia in marriage to Aeneas
 Latinōrum: Latin; of Latinus; of/in (good/correct/plain) Latin (language); Roman/Italian; plural masculine genitive from Latīnus, Latīna, Latīnum
 Lāviniam: Lavinia, the wife of Aeneas and son of Latinus
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 meridiem: mid-day; singular masculine accusative from meridiēs, meridiēi
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 multa: many; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 negōtiātiōnis: business; singular feminine genitive from negōtiātiō, negōtiātiōnis
 nōmine: named; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 obtinuit: he obtained; 3rd person singular perfect active from obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus
 occidentem: west (accusative case)
 olim: one day, once upon a time
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orientem: east (accusative case)
 partēs: parts; plural feminine nominative from pars, partis
 peperit: she gave birth; 3rd person singular perfect from pariō, parere, peperī, partus
 per: through
 Picī: Picus, the first king of the Latins and the son of Saturn (genitive case). Unrelated to the Picts, a group that lived in Scotland.
 portandās: carrying; plural feminine accusative gerund from porto, portare, portavi, portatus
 post: behind, after, since
 postea: thereafter, later
 pro: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quasi: as if, like, as much as
 quis: who
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 ratēs: rafts, barks, vessels; plural feminine nominative from ratis, ratis
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgni
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānus, -a -um
 Sabrināe: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain. Sabrināe is probably in the nominative case here.
 Saturnī: of Saturn, the Roman god (genitive case)
 scīre: to know; present active infinitive from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scitus
 scriptum: scriptum est = it was written; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus
 sed: but
 septentrionem: north; singular masculine accusative from septentriō, septentriōnis
 si: if
 sic: thus
 Silvium: Silvius, a son of Aeneas (accusative case)
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 superātō: having overcome; ablative past passive participle from superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus
 tamen: however
 Tamesis: the River Thames
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 Troiānum: Trojan; singular neuter nominative from Trojānus, Trojāna, Trojānum
 Turnō: Turnus, a king of the Rutuli killed by Aeneas (ablative case)
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
 vehēbantur: was being carried; 3rd person plural imperfect passive from vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus
 vel: or
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from volō, velle, voluī, -

Silvius autem dūxit uxōrem et gravida fuit et nūntiātum est Aenēae¹, quod nurus sua gravida esset et mīsit ad Ascanium filium suum, ut mitteret magum suum ad cōnsiderandam uxōrem, ut explōrāret quid habēret in uterō, sī masculum vel fēminam. Et magus cōnsiderāvit uxōrem et reversus est. Propter hanc vāticinātiōnem magus occīsus est ab Ascaniō, quia dīxit Ascaniō, quod masculum habēret in uterō mulier et filius² mortis erit, quia occīdet patrem suum et mātrem suam et erit exōsus omnibus hominibus. Sīc ēvenit: in nātivitāte illius mulier mortua est et nūtrītus est filius et vocātum est nōmen eius Brūtō.

¹*Silvius then married a woman and she was pregnant and (this) was announced to Aeneas, that his daughter-in-law was pregnant.*

²*That the woman had a male in (her) womb and he will be a bringer of death. filius mortis* could be parsed two ways: son of death, with *mortis* being singular genitive, or *filius mortīs*: son with deaths, with *mortīs* being ablative plural. In either case, the context makes it clear that the child is fated to bring death to his mother and father.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aenēae: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus (dative case)
 Ascaniō: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative or dative case)
 Ascanium: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (accusative case)
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine nominative from Brūtus, Brūtī
 cōsiderandam: considering; singular feminine accusative gerund from cōsiderō, cōsiderāre, cōsiderāvī, cōsiderātus
 cōsiderāvit: he considered; 3rd person singular perfect active from cōsiderō, cōsiderāre, cōsiderāvī, cōsiderātus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dūxit: he lead; 3rd person singular perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus
 eius: his/her/its
 erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvenit: it happened; 3rd person singular present active from ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvenī, ēventus
 exōsus: hateful or hated; singular masculine nominative from exōsus, exōsa, exōsum
 explōrāret: he might investigate; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātus
 fēminam: woman, wife; singular feminine accusative from fēmina, fēminae
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 grāvīda: pregnant; singular feminine nominative from grāvīdus, grāvīda, grāvīdum
 habēret: he (might) have had; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō, hominīs
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 magum: magician; singular masculine accusative from magus, magī
 magus: magician; singular masculine nominative from magus, magī
 masculum: male; singular neuter accusative from masculus, mascula, masculum
 mātrem: mother; singular feminine accusative from māter, mātis
 mīsīt: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
 mitteret: he was sending; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
 mortis: death; singular feminine genitive from mors, mortis
 mortua + est: she died; singular feminine nominative perfect participle from morior, morī, mortuus
 mulier: woman; singular feminine nominative from mulier, mulieris
 nātīvitāte: birth, nativity; singular feminine ablative from nātīvitās, nātīvitātis
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nūntiātum: nūntiātum est = it was announced; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus
 nurus: young woman, daughter-in-law; singular feminine nominative from nurus, nurūs
 nūtrītus + est: he was nourished; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from nūtriō, nūtrīre, nūtrīvī, nūtrītus
 occīdet: he will kill; 3rd person singular future from occīdō, occidere, occidī, occisus
 occīsus: occīsus est = he was killed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from occīdō, occidere, occidī, occisus
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 propter: because of, near
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 reversus: reversus + est = he returned
 sī: if
 sīc: thus
 Silvius: Silvius, son of Aeneas (or Ascanius)
 sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from suus
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 ut: so that
 uterō: womb; singular masculine ablative from uterus, uterī
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
 vātīcinātiōnem: prophecy, sooth-saying; singular feminine accusative from vātīcinātiō, vātīcinātiōnis
 vel: or
 vocātum: vocātum est = he was called; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum

Post multum intervāllum iuxtā¹ vāticinātiōnem magī, dum ipse lūdēbat cum aliīs, ictū² sagittae occīdit patrem suum nōn dē industriā, sed cāsū. Et expulsus est ab Ītaliā et arminilis fuit et vēnit ad īsulās maris Tyrrēnī et expulsus³ est ā Graecīs causā occīsiōnis Turnī, quam Aenēās occiderat, et pervēnit ad Gallōs usque et ibī condidit cīvitātem Turonōrum, quae vocātur Turnīs. Et posteā ad istam pervēnit īsulam, quae ā nōmine suō accēpit nōmen, id est Brittanniam et implēvit eam cum suō genere et habitāvit ibī. Ab illō autem diē habitāta est Brittannia usque in hodiernum diem.

¹*After a long interval (of time) according to the prophecy.*

²*A shot of an arrow killed his father not on purpose, but by accident.*

³*He was expelled by the Greeks because of the killing of Turnus, whom Aeneas killed. Since Silvius was related to Aeneas, who killed Turnus, king of the Rutuli, the Greeks expelled Silvius from their land.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 accēpit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aeneas: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus
 aliīs: others; plural dative from alius, alia, aliud
 arminilis: this is not a standard Latin word and the meaning is unknown. Perhaps it means that he was without weapons.
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Brittannia: Britain
 Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 cāsū: accidentally, by chance (adverb)
 causa: cause, reason; singular feminine nominative from causa, causae
 cīvitatē: civilization; singular feminine accusative from cīvitas, civitātis
 condidit: he founded, he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from condō, condere, condidī, conditus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 expulsus: expulsus est = he was driven out; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 Gallōs: Gauls; plural masculine accusative from Gallus, Galli
 genere: family, offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 Graecīs: by the Greeks; plural masculine ablative from Graecus, Graeci
 habitāta: habitāta est = it was inhabited; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 habitāvit: he inhabited; 3rd person singular perfect active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 ibī: there, then
 ictū: blow, stroke; singular masculine ablative from ictus, ictūs
 id: it
 illō: these; singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 implēvit: he fulfilled, filled up; 3rd person singular perfect active from impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 industriā: diligence, purpose; singular feminine ablative from industria, industriae
 īnsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īnsula, insulae
 īnsulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from īnsula, insulae
 intervallum: interval, distance; singular neuter accusative from intervallum, intervalli
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 istam: that; singular feminine accusative from iste, ista, istud
 Italiā: Italy; singular feminine ablative from Italia, Italiae
 iuxtā: according to
 lūdēbat: he was playing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lusus
 magi: of the magician; singular masculine genitive from magus, magi
 maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
 multum: many; singular neuter nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 occīdit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus
 occisiōnis: murder; singular feminine genitive from occisiō, occisiōnis
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quam: how? how much?
 sagittae: of an arrow; singular feminine genitive from sagitta, sagittae
 sed: but
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative from suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 Turni: of Turnus, a king of the Rutuli killed by Aeneas (ablative case)
 Turnīs: Tours, France
 Turonōrum: of the people of Tours, France, or perhaps of the descendant of Turnus
 Tyrrēni: the Tyrrhenian Sea, which lies off the western coast of Italy
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vāticinātiōnem: prophecy; singular feminine accusative from vāticinātiō, vāticinātiōnis
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vocātur: to be called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

11 Aenēās autem rēgnāvit tribus annīs apud Latīnōs. Ascanius rēgnāvit annīs 37, post quem Silvius Aenēae filius rēgnāvit annīs 12, Postumus¹ annīs trīgintā novem, ā quō Albānōrum rēgēs Silvīi appellātī sunt, cuius frāter erat Brittō. Quandō rēgnābat Brittō in Brittanniā, Helī² sacerdotēs iūdicābat in Israhēl et tunc arca testāmentī ab aliēnigenīs possidēbātur. Postumus frāter eius apud Latīnōs rēgnābat.

12 Post intervāllum multōrum annōrum nōn minus 800 Pictī vēnērunt et occupāvērunt īnsulās, quae vocantur Orcadēs, et postea ex īnsulīs vastāvērunt regiōnēs multās et occupāvērunt eas in sinistrālī plāgā Britanniae, et maneant ibī tertiam partem Britanniae tenentēs usque in hodiernum diem.

¹Postumus ("late-born") appears to be the name of a Latin king who reigned after Silvius, perhaps of a son of Brutus born after Brutus's death. Brittō appears to be a variant spelling of Brutus.

²Eli the priest was judging in Israel and then the ark of the testimony was possessed by foreigners. The account of the Philistines seizing the Ark of the Covenant is found in 1 Samuel 4.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Aenēae: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus (genitive case)
 Aenēās: Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus
 Albānōrum: of the people of Alba Longa
 aliēnigenīs: strangers, foreigners; plural masculine ablative from aliēnigena, aliēnigenae
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōrum: of years; plural masculine genitive from annus, annī
 appellāti: appellāti sunt = were named; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from appellō, appellāre, appellāvi, appellātus
 apud: among
 arca: ark; singular feminine nominative from arca, arcae
 Ascanius: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative or dative case)
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Britannia: Britain
 Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Brittō: Brittō, an early settler of Britain
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diē
 eās: their; plural feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter, frātris
 Heli: Eli, Old Testament high priest.
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 ibi: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from insula, insulae
 insulīs: islands; plural feminine ablative from insula, insulae
 intervallum: interval, distance; singular neuter nominative from intervallum, intervalli
 Israhēl: Israel; singular masculine nominative from Israhēl, Israhēlis
 iudicābat: he was judging; 3rd person singular imperfect active from iudicō, iudicāre, iudicāvi, iudicātus
 Latīnōs: Latins, of Latium; plural masculine accusative from Latinus, Latīna, Latīnum
 maneant: he remains; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 minus: less
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 multōrum: many; plural masculine genitive from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nōn: not
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 occupāverunt: they seized, overtook, attacked; 3rd person plural perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 Orcades: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of Scotland
 partem: part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
 Picti: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
 plāgā: coast; singular feminine ablative from plāga, plāgae
 possidēbatur: it was being possessed; infinitive
 post: behind, after, since
 postea: thereafter, later
 Postumus: apparently the name of a king; the word itself means late, particularly of a child born after a father's death; singular masculine nominative from postumus, postuma, postumum
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quandō: when, because
 quem: what, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine nominative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
 sacerdos: priest; singular common nominative from sacerdos, sacerdotis
 Silvii: Silvius, son of Aeneas (or Ascanius) (genitive case)
 Silvius: Silvius, son of Aeneas (or Ascanius)
 sinistrāli: left, probably means north in this context, singular feminine ablative from sinistra, sinistrae
 tenentēs: holding; plural common nominative present participle from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
 tertiam: third; singular feminine accusative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 testamenti: of the testament; singular neuter genitive from testāmentum, testāmenti
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trīgintā: thirty
 tunc: then
 usque: until, all the way, up until
 vāstāverunt: they ravaged, they devastated; 3rd person plural perfect active from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvi, vāstātus
 vērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venīre, veni, ventus
 vocantur: they are called; 3rd person plural present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātus

13 Novissime autem Scotti vērunt ā partibus Hispāniae ad Hiberniam. Prīmus autem vēnit Partholomus cum mīlle hominibus dē virīs et mulieribus et crēvērunt usque ad quattuor mīlia hominum et vēnit mortālītās super eōs et in ūnā septimānā omnēs periērunt et nōn remānsit ex illīs etiam ūnus. Secundus venit ad Hiberniam Nimeth filius quīdam Agnōminis, quī fertur¹ nāvīgāsse super mare annum et dīmidium et postea tenuit portum in Hiberniā frāctīs nāvibus eius et mānsit ibīdem per multōs annōs et iterum nāvīgāvit cum suīs et ad Hispāniam reversus est. Et postea vērunt trēs filiī mīlitis Hispāniae² cum trīgintā ciulīs apud illōs et cum trīgintā coniugibus³ in ūnāquāque ciulā et mānsērunt ibī per spatium ūnīus annī.

¹*Who is said to have sailed over the sea for a year and a half and afterwards stayed in a harbor in Ireland, his boats having been fractured.*

²*Three sons of a soldier of Spain.* This text gives no name or further information about whom this soldier might be.

³The thirty wives in each ship appears to mean that the voyage is meant to establish a civilization. Presumably the wives all have their own husbands, and aren't all married to the three sons.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Agnōminis: father of Nimeth. Interestingly, Agnōminis means
 surname or nickname, from agnōmen, agnōminis
 annī: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, annī
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 annum: year; singular masculine accusative from annus, annī
 apud: at, by, near
 autem: but, however, moreover
 ciula: longship; singular feminine nominative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 ciulis: longships; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from
 ceola, ceolae
 coniugibus: spouses; plural common ablative from conjunx,
 conjugis
 crēverunt: they increased, they came forth; 3rd person plural
 perfect active from cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dimidium: half; singular neuter nominative from dimidium,
 dimidiū
 eius: his/her/its
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 etiam: still
 ex: out of, from
 fertur: is reported; 3rd person singular present passive from
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 frāctis: having been broken; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from frangō, frangere, frēgi, fractus
 Hibernia: Ireland; singular feminine nominative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 Hispāniae: of Hispania; singular feminine genitive from
 Hispania, Hispāniae
 Hispāniam: Hispania; singular feminine accusative from
 Hispania, Hispāniae
 hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō,
 hominis
 hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, hominis
 ibi: there, then
 ibidem: in the same place
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 iterum: again
 mānsērunt: they have remained; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from maneo, manere, mānsi, mānsus
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 maneo, manere, mānsi, mānsus
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 milia: one thousand
 militis: of a soldier; singular masculine genitive from miles,
 militis
 mille: one thousand
 mortālītās: mortality, plague; singular feminine nominative from
 mortālītās, mortālītātis
 mulieribus: women; plural feminine ablative from mulier,
 mulieris
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 nāvibus: boats; plural feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis
 nāvigāvisse: to have sailed; perfect infinitive from nāvigō,
 nāvigāre, nāvigāvi, nāvigātus
 nāvigāvit: he sailed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvi, nāvigātus
 Nimith: an early settler of Ireland
 nōn: not
 novissimē: most recently; superlative adverb from novus, nova
 -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis,
 omnis, omne
 Partholomus: an earlier settler of Ireland
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 per: through
 perivērunt: they perished; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 pereō, perire, perivī(ii), peritus
 portum: harbor, port; singular masculine accusative from
 portus, portūs
 postea: thereafter, later
 primus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
 prima, primum
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui

quattuor: 4
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quidam: a certain
 remānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 remaneō, remanere, remānsi, remānsus
 reversus: reversus + est = he returned
 secundus: second, following; singular masculine nominative
 from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, binī -ae -a, bis
 septimānā: week; singular feminine ablative from septimanus,
 septimana, septimanum
 spatium: space, duration; singular neuter accusative from
 spatium, spatii
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 super: above, on top of
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 teneō, tenere, tenui, tentus
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
 -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trīgintā: thirty
 ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from ūnus -a -um,
 primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnāquāque: in each, feminine ablative from ūnusquisque
 ūniūs: of one (genitive of ūnus)
 ūnus: one
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēni, ventus
 virīs: men; plural neuter ablative from virus, viri

Et postea cōspiciunt turrim vitream¹ in mediō marī et hominēs cōspiciēbant super turrim et quaerēbant loquī ad illōs et numquam respondēbant et ipsī ūnō annō ad oppugnātiōnem turris properāvērunt cum omnibus ciulīs suīs et cum omnibus mulieribus exceptā ūnā ciulā, quae cōfrācta est naufragiō, in quā erant virī trīgintā totidemque mulierēs. Et aliae nāvēs nāvigāvērunt ad expugnandam turrim, et dum omnēs dēscenderant in litore, quod erat circā turrim, operuit illōs mare et dēmersi sunt et nōn ēvāsit ūnus ex illīs. Et dē familiā illius ciulae, quae relictā est propter frāctiōnem, tōta Hibernia implēta est usque in hodiernum diem. Et postea vēnērunt paulātīm ā partibus Hispāniae et tenuērunt regiōnēs plūrimās.

¹The glass tower shares some similarities to the crystal column encountered by the Irish monk St. Brendan on his sea voyage in the *Nāvigātiō Sāctī Brendānī Abbātis*, namely its glassy construction and its being in the middle of the sea.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliae: other; plural feminine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 circā: around, about
 ciula: longship; singular feminine nominative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 ciulae: longship; singular feminine genitive or plural nominative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 ciulis: longship; plural feminine dative or ablative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 cōnfrācta: cōnfrācta est = was broken into pieces; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from
 cōspiciēbant: they were observing; 3rd person plural imperfect active from cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxi, cōspectus
 cōspiciunt: they observe; 3rd person plural present active from cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspēxi, cōspectus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēmersī: dēmersī sunt = they were submerged; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dēmergō, dēmergere, dēmersī, dēmersus
 dēscenderant: they had descended; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscensus
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dum: while, as long as, until
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvāsīt: he avoided, he escaped; 3rd person singular perfect active from ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus
 ex: out of, from
 exceptā: except; feminine ablative from exceptus, -a, -um
 expugnandam: assaulting, storming, conquering; singular feminine accusative gerund from expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus
 familiā: family; singular feminine ablative from familia, familiae
 frāctiōnem: breaking; singular feminine accusative from frāctiō, frāctiōnis
 Hibernia: Ireland; singular feminine nominative from Hibernia, Hiberniae
 Hispāniae: of Hispania; singular feminine genitive from Hispania, Hispaniae
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine accusative from homō, hominis
 illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 implēta: implēta est = was filled up; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lītore: beach, shore; singular neuter ablative from lītus, litoris
 loqui: to speak; infinitive
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium
 mulierēs: women; plural feminine nominative from mulier, mulieris
 mulieribus: women; plural feminine ablative from mulier, mulieris
 naufragiō: shipwreck; singular neuter ablative from naufragium, naufragiī
 nāvēs: boats; plural feminine nominative from nāvis, nāvis
 nāvigāverunt: they sailed; 3rd person plural perfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
 nōn: not
 numquam: never
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 operuit: it covered; 3rd person singular perfect active from operiō, operīre, operui, opertus
 oppugnatiōnem: assault, attack; singular feminine accusative from oppugnatiō, oppugnatiōnis
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 paulātim: little by little
 plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 postea: thereafter, later
 properāverunt: they hurried; 3rd person plural perfect active from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
 propter: because of, near
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quaerēbant: they were seeking; 3rd person plural imperfect active from quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitus
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine nominative from regiō, regiōnis
 relictā: relictā est = was left behind; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from
 respondēbant: they were responding; 3rd person plural imperfect active from respondeo, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 super: above, on top of
 tenuērunt: they held; 3rd person plural perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 tōta: whole, total; singular feminine nominative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 totidem: as many, the same number of
 trigintā: thirty
 turrim: tower; singular feminine accusative from turris, turris
 turris: tower; singular feminine nominative from turris, turris
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnus: one
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 virī: man; singular neuter genitive from virus, viri
 vitream: of glass, glassy, resembling glass in its color (greenish), translucency, or glitter; singular feminine accusative from vitreus, vitrea, vitreum

14 Novissimē vēnit Damhactor et ibī habitāvit cum omnī genere suō usque hodiē in Brittanniā. Istoreth Istorīnī filius tenuit Dalriēta cum suīs; Builc autem cum suīs tenuit Euboniam īnsulam et aliās circiter; filiū autem Liethān obtinuērunt in regiōne Demetōrum et in aliīs regiōnibus, id est Guir¹ Cetguēlī, dōnec expulsī sunt² ā Cunedā et ā filiīs eius ab omnibus Brittanncīs regiōnibus.

15 Sī quis autem scīre voluerit³, quandō vel quō tempore fuit inhabitābilis et dēserta Hibernia, sīc mihi perītissimī Scottōrum nūntiāvērunt. Quandō vēnērunt per mare rubrum filiū Isrāhēl, Aegyptiū vēnērunt et secūtī⁴ sunt et dēmersī, ut in lēge⁵ legitur. Erat vir nōbilis dē Scythiā cum magnā familiā apud Aegyptiōs et expulsus est ā rēgnō suō et ibī erat, quandō Aegyptiū mersī sunt, et nōn perrēxit ad persequendum⁶ populum Deī. Illī autem, quī superfuerant, iniērunt cōnsilium, ut expellerent illum, nē⁷ rēgnū illōrum obsīderet et occupāret, quia fortēs illōrum dēmersī⁸ erant in rubrum mare, et expulsus est.

¹Guir and Cetguēlī appear to be two different places joined together by the author.

²expulsī sunt = they were expelled

³If anyone, however, will want to know, when or in what time Ireland was uninhabited and deserted, thus the most learned of the Scots narrated to me.

⁴The Egyptians came and followed and were drowned. *secūtī sunt* has an active meaning (they followed) because *sequor* is deponent; *dēmersī sunt* has a passive meaning (they were drowned) because *dēmergere* is not deponent. A deponent verb is a verb that takes passive endings but is active in meaning.

⁵As is read in the Law. The Law mentioned here is the Law of Moses, meaning the first five books of the Bible: Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. The incident related is in Exodus 14: Moses miraculously parted the Red Sea so that the Isrealites could pass through on dry ground, and then when Pharoah's army pursued them the Red Sea closed again upon them, drowning them.

⁶And he did not go out to pursue (for pursuing) the people of God.

⁷So that he might not beseige and occupy their kingdom. The subjunctive is used in *obsīderet* and *occupāret* because of the *nē* clause.

⁸Because their strong (men) had been drowned in the Red Sea.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aegyptiī: Egyptians; plural masculine nominative from Aegyptius, Aegyptiū
 Aegyptios: Egyptians, plural masculine accusative from Aegyptius, Aegyptiū
 aliās: others; plural feminine accusative from alius, alia, aliud
 aliis: others; plural ablative from alius, alia, aliud
 apud: at, by, near
 autem: and, moreover
 Brittannia: Britain
 Brittannicis: Britannic (plural ablative case)
 Builc: the name of a tribal leader
 Cetgueli: possibly Cydweli (Kidwelly), a place in south-west Wales
 circiter: near, close
 cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from consilium, consiliū
 cum: with
 Cunedā: Cunedda ap Ederu, King of Gwynedd, an early Welsh leader who reigned circa AD 450-460. Cunedda is mentioned again in section 62, there named Cunedag.
 Dalriēta: Dál Riata (Dalriada), a Gaelic kingdom on the western seaboard of Scotland and northern Ireland
 Damhoctor: the name of a tribal leader
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Dei: of God; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 demersī: having been drowned; plural masculine nominative past passive participle from dēmergō, dēmergere, dēmersī, dēmersus
 Demetōrum: of the Demetae, a tribe that lived in a region of southwest Wales, modern-day Dyfed.
 dēserta: deserted; singular feminine nominative from dēsertus, dēserta, dēsertum
 dōnec: while, as long as, until
 eius: his/her/its
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 Euboniam: The Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland (accusative case).
 expellent: they drove out; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 expulsi: having been driven out; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 expulsus: having been driven out; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 familiā: family; singular feminine ablative from familia, familiae
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili
 filiis: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fortēs: strong (men); plural common nominative from fortis, forte, fortior -or -us, fortissimus -a -um
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 genere: family, offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 Guir: possibly Gŵyr (Gower), a place in south-west Wales.
 habitāvit: he inhabited; 3rd person singular perfect active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 Hibernia: Ireland; singular feminine nominative from Hibernia, Hiberniae
 hodiē: today
 ibi: there, then
 id: it
 illi: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inhabitābilis: uninhabitable (or uninhabited, in this context); singular common nominative from inhabitābilis, inhabitābilis, inhabitābile
 iniērunt: they began, entered into; 3rd person plural perfect active from ineō, inire, inivī(iī), initus
 īnsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īnsula, īnsulae
 Israhēl: Israel; singular masculine nominative from Israhēl, Israhēlis
 Istoreth: Istoreth, son of Istorinus
 Istorini: Istorinus, father of Istoreth
 lēge: law; singular feminine ablative from lēx, lēgis
 legitur: is read; 3rd person singular present passive from legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus
 Liethan: a tribal leader (?), likely a Latinized version of a Celtic name
 magnā: large; singular feminine ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 mersi: having been plunged, sunk, drowned; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mergō, mergere, mersi, mersus
 mihī: to me; (pronoun)
 nē: not
 nōbilis: noble, famous, high-born; singular common nominative from nōbilis, nōbile, nōbilio -or -us, nōbilissimus -a -um
 nōn: not
 novissimē: lastly, most recently; adverb from novus, nova -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 nūntiāverunt: they related, narrated, announced; 3rd person plural perfect active from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus
 obsideret: he besieged; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus
 obtinuerunt: they obtained; 3rd person plural perfect active from obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus
 occupāret: he seized; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 per: through
 peritissimi: most experienced, knowledgeable; plural masculine nominative from peritus, perita -um, peritior -or -us, peritissimus -a -um
 perrexit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from pergō, pergere, perrexi, perrectus
 persequendum: pursuing; gerund from persequor, persequi, persequens
 populum: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from populus, populi
 quādo: when, because
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quis: who
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 rubrum: red; singular neuter nominative from ruber, rubra, rubrum
 scīre: to know; present infinitive from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus
 Scottōrum: of the Scots
 Scythiā: from Scythia, a region on the Pontic steppe
 sēcūti: sēcūti + sunt = they followed
 sī: if
 sic: thus
 suis: their; plural ablative of suus
 suō: their; singular ablative of suus
 superfuerant: they had survived, been left over; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from supersum, superesse, superfui, superfuturus
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
 usque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vel: or
 vēnerunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, viri
 voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from volō, velle, volui, -

At ille per quadrāgintā et duōs annōs ambulāvit per Āfricam, et vēnērunt ad ārās¹ Filistīnōrum per Lacum Salīnārum et vēnērunt inter Rusicadam et montēs Azāriae et vēnērunt per flūmen Malvam et trānsiērunt per Maritāniam ad columnās Herculis et nāvigāvērunt Tyrrēnum mare et pervēnērunt ad Hispāniam usque et ibī habitāvērunt per multōs annōs et crēvērunt et multiplicātī sunt nimis et gēns illōrum multiplicāta est nimis. Et postea vēnērunt ad Hiberniam post mīlle et duōs annōs, postquam mersi sunt Aegyptiī in rubrum mare, et ad regiōnēs Dalriēta, in tempore, quō rēgnābat Brūtus apud Rōmānōs, ā quō cōsulēs esse² coepērunt, deinde tribūnī plēbis ac dictātōrēs. Et cōsulēs rūsum rem pūblicam obtinuērunt per annōs 447, quae prius³ rēgia dignitāte damnātā fuerat.

Brittōnēs vēnērunt in tertiā aetāte mundī ad Brittanniam; Scottī autem in quārtā obtinuērunt Hiberniam. Scottī autem, quī sunt in occidente, et Pictī dē aquilōne pugnābant ūnanimiter et ūnō impetū contrā Brittōnēs indēsiner, quia sine armīs ūtēbantur⁴ Brittōnēs. Et post multum intervāllum temporis Rōmānī monarchiam tōtīus mundī obtinuērunt.

¹The Altars of the Philistines and the Lake of Salt-Works are likely places in North Africa, since it appears that the journey taken is west from Egypt across North Africa, then across the Straits of Gibralter to Spain. It's possible that the Lacum Salīnārum refers to the Dead Sea, which is very salty, in which case the Altars of the Philistines would refer to a place that was in Philistine territory.

²From which consuls began to be, then tribunes of the plebs and dictators.

³And consuls again held the republic for 447 years, which before had been condemned by royal dignity. This refers to the period in which Rome had seven legendary kings, the last of whom was overthrown and the consulship reinstated. *Condemned by royal dignity* means that the author feels the period of the kings was bad for Rome.

⁴Because the Britons were using no weapons. Perhaps this means the Britons were under-armed, rather than completely unarmed.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aegyptiī: Egyptian; singular masculine genitive from Aegyptius, Aegyptii
 aetāte: age; singular feminine ablative from aetās, aetātis
 Africam: Africa; singular feminine accusative from Africa, Africae
 ambulāvit: he walked; 3rd person singular perfect active from ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 apud: at, by, near
 aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō, aquilōnis
 ārās: altars, refuges; plural feminine accusative from āra, ārae
 armīs: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 at: and
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Azariae: a mountain range in North Africa, possibly the Aures Mountains in Algeria
 Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Brūtus: Brutus; singular masculine nominative from Brūtus, Brūtī
 coepērunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum
 columnās: columns; plural feminine accusative from columna, columnae
 cōsulēs: consuls; plural masculine nominative from cōsul, cōsulis
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 crēverunt: they increased, they came forth; 3rd person plural perfect active from cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus
 Dalriēta: Dál Riata (Dalriada), a Gaelic kingdom on the western seaboard of Scotland and northern Ireland
 damnātā: condemned; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from damno, damnare, damnavi, damnatus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 deinde: after
 dictātōrēs: dictators; plural masculine nominative from dictātōr, dictātōris
 dignitāte: worth, honor, esteem, rank; singular feminine ablative from dignitās, dignitātis
 duōs: two
 esse: to be
 et: and
 Filistinōrum: of the Philistines
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 fuerat: it had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from gēns, gentis
 habitāvērunt: they inhabited; 3rd person plural perfect active from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 Herculis: of Hercules; singular masculine genitive from Herculēs, Herculis
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia, Hiberniae
 Hispāniam: Hispania, modern-day Spain; singular feminine accusative from Hispānia, Hispāniae
 ibi: there, then
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 impetū: attack, assault, fury; singular masculine ablative from impetus, impetūs
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indēsiner: incessantly, ceaselessly
 inter: between, among, during
 intervallum: interval, distance; singular neuter accusative from intervallum, intervallī
 lacum: lake; singular masculine accusative from lacus, lacūs
 Malvam: possibly the Moulouya River in Morocco
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 Maritaniam: Mauretania, northwest Africa
 mersī: having been plunged, sunk, drowned; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mergō, mergere, mersī, mersus
 mille: one thousand
 monarchiam: monarchy; singular feminine accusative from monarchia, monarchiae
 montēs: mountains; plural masculine accusative from mōns, montis
 multiplicāta: having been multiplied; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō, multiplicāre, multiplicāvī, multiplicātus
 multiplicātī: having been multiplied; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō, multiplicāre, multiplicāvī, multiplicātus
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 multum: many; singular neuter nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nāvigāverunt: they sailed; 3rd person plural perfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
 nimis: too much, extremely
 obtinuerunt: they obtained; 3rd person plural perfect active from obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus
 occidente: west; singular masculine ablative from occidēs, occidentis
 per: through
 pervēnerunt: they arrived; 3rd person plural perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 Pictī: Picts, a Scottish tribe; plural masculine nominative
 plēbis: common people; singular feminine genitive from plēbs, plēbis
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 postquam: since, since then, after
 prius: before
 pūblicam: rem pūblicam = republic (literally 'public things')
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quartā: fourth; singular feminine ablative from quattuor, quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 regiā: royal palace, court; singular feminine ablative from regius, regia, regium
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rem: thing; rem pūblicam = republic (literally 'public things')
 Rōmānī: Romans
 Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 rubrum: red; singular neuter accusative from ruber, rubra, rubrum
 rūsum: again
 Rusicadam: Rusicada, the Roman city in northeastern Algeria, modern-day Skikda
 salinārum: of salt-pits, salt-works; plural feminine genitive from salina, salinae
 Scottī: the Scots
 sine: without
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 temporis: of times, of periods; singular neuter genitive from tempus, temporis
 tertiā: third; singular feminine ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 trānsivērunt: they went over, they crossed over; 3rd person plural perfect active from trānseō, trānsire, trānsivī (ī), trānsitus
 tribūnī: tribunes; plural masculine nominative from tribūnus, tribūnī
 Tyrrenum: the Tyrrhenian Sea, which lies on the west coast of Italy
 ūnanimiter: unanimously, as one body/spirit
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ūtēbantur: they were using; infinitive
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, venī, ventus

16 Ā prīmō annō, quō Saxonēs vērunt in Brittanniam usque ad annum quārtum Mermīnī rēgis supputantur annī 329. Ā nātīvitāte Dominī usque ad adventum Patriciī ad Scottōs 405 annī sunt. Ā morte Patriciī usque ad obitum sāctae Brigidae sexāgintā annī. Ā nātīvitāte Columbae usque mortem Brigidae quattuor annī sunt. Initium compotī: vīgintī trēs cyclī decemnovennalēs ab incarnātiōne dominī usque ad adventum Patriciī in Hiberniam et ipsī annōs efficiunt numerō 438, et ab adventū Patriciī usque ad cyclum decemnovennalem, in quō sumus, vīgintī duo cyclī sunt, id est, 421 sunt¹, duo annī in ogdoade usque in hunc annum, in quō sumus.

¹19*22=420, so presumably the author had good reason to include another year in the calculation.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adventū: singular masculine ablative from adventus, adventūs
 adventum: arrival; singular masculine accusative from
 adventus, adventūs
 annī: year; plural masculine nominative from annus, annī
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 annum: year; singular masculine accusative from annus, annī
 Brigidae: of Saint Brigid, abbess and patroness Saint of Ireland,
 lived circa 451-525 AD
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Columbae: of Saint Columba, 521-597 AD, an Irish abbot and
 missionary sent to the Picts; one of the Twelve Apostles of
 Ireland
 compotī: of the computation; singular masculine genitive from
 compotus, compotī
 cyclī: cycles; plural masculine nominative from cyclus, cyclī
 cyclum: cycle; singular masculine accusative from cyclus, cyclī
 decemnovennalem: nineteen-year cycle; singular accusative
 adjective from decemnovennalis
 decemnovennalēs: nineteen-year cycle; plural nominative
 adjective from decemnovennalis
 Domini: of the Lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus,
 domini
 duo: two
 efficiunt: they produce; 3rd person plural present active from
 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incarnātiōne: incarnation; singular feminine ablative from
 incarnātiō, incarnātiōnis
 initium: beginning; singular neuter nominative from initium,
 initii
 ipsī: itself; sing. dative or plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 Merminī: of King Merminus, an unknown king, possibly Merfyn
 Frych (reigned 825-844 AD)
 morte: death; singular feminine ablative from mors, mortis
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 nātivitāte: birth, nativity; singular feminine ablative from
 nātivitās, nātivitātis
 numerō: number, division, troop; singular masculine ablative
 from numerus, numeri
 obitum: death; singular masculine accusative from obitus,
 obitūs
 ogdoade: eight, eight-year cycle; singular feminine ablative
 from ogdoas, ogdoadis; singular feminine ablative from
 ogdoas, ogdoadis
 Patricii: of Saint Patrick, patron saint of Ireland
 primō: first; singular masculine ablative from primus, prima,
 primum
 quārtum: fourth
 quattuor: 4
 quō: in which; singular ablative of quis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 sanctae: holy
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Scottōs: the Scots (plural accusative case)
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sumus: we are; 1st person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 supputantur: they are computed; 3rd person plural present
 passive from supputō, supputāre, supputāvi, supputātus
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
 -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnerunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 vīgintī: 20

17 Aliud experīmentum invēnī dē istō Brūtō ex veteribus¹ librīs veterum nostrōrum. Trēs filiī Noē dīvisērunt orbem in trēs partēs post dīluvium². Sem in Asiā, Cham in Āfricā, Iafeth in Eurōpā dīlātāvērunt terminōs suōs. Prīmus homō venit ad Eurōpam dē genere Iafeth Alānus cum tribus filiīs suīs, quōrum nōmina sunt Hessitiō, Armenōn, Negue. Hessitiō autem habuit filiōs quattuor: hī sunt Francus, Rōmānus, Brittō, Albānus. Armenon autem habuit quīnque filiōs: Gothus, Valagothus, Gebidus, Burgundus, Longobardus. Negue autem habuit trēs filiōs: Vandalus, Saxō, Boguarus. Ab Hisitōne autem ortae sunt quattuor gentēs Francī, Latīnī, Albānī et Brittī. Ab Armēnōne autem quīnque: Gothī, Valagothī, Gebidī, Burgundī, Longobardī. Ā Neguīō vērō quattuor Boguāriī, Vandalī, Saxonēs et Turingī. Istae autem gentēs subdivīsae sunt per tōtam Eurōpam. Alānus autem, ut aiunt, filius fuit Fetebir, filiī Ougomun, filiī Thōī, filiī Boib, filiī Simeōn, filiī Mair, filiī Ethach, filiī Aurthach, filiī Echthet, filiī Oth, filiī Abir, filiī Ra, filiī Ezra, filiī Izrau, filiī Baath, filiī Iobaath, filiī Iovan, filiī Iafeth, filiī Noe, filiī Lamech, filiī Matusalae, filiī Enoch, filiī Iareth, filiī Malalehēl, filiī Cainan, filiī Ēnōs, filiī Seth, filiī Adam, filiī deī vīvī. Hanc perītiam³ invēnī ex trāditiōne veterum.

¹*I found another account of this Brutus in the old books of our elders.*

²The flood referred to here is the global flood described in Genesis, after which Noah repopulated the earth. The genealogies in this page are put together from different sources. Some of the names can be found in the Table of Nations in Genesis 10. Others, specifically the line from Japheth to Alanus, can be found in a document called the Frankish Table of Nations. Unfortunately, we no longer have access to any other sources (the 'books of the elders') that the author used.

³*This account I found out of the tradition of the elders.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Abir: Abir, son of Ra
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Adam: Adam, the first man
 Africā: Africa; singular feminine ablative from Africa, Africae
 aiunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from aio, -, -
 Alānus: the descendent of Japheth who first settled Europe.
 Albāni: the Albāni, an Illyrian tribe
 Albānus: son of Hessitiō, father of the Albāni
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 Armenon: Armenon, son of Alānus
 Asiā: Asia, Asia Minor; singular feminine ablative from Asia, Asiae
 Aurthach: Aurthach, son of Echthet
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Baath: Baath, son of Jobaath
 Boguarii: probably the Bavarians
 Boquarus: Boquarus, son of Negue
 Boib: Boib, son of Simeon
 Britti: the Britons
 Brittō: Brittō, son of Hessitiō, father of the Britons
 Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine ablative from Brūtus, Brūti
 Burgundi: the Burgundians
 Burgundus: Burgundus, son of Armenon, father of the Burgundians
 Cainan: Kenan, son of Enosh
 Cham: Ham, the son of Noah who fathered the Africans
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 dilātāverunt: they expanded; 3rd person plural perfect active from dilātō, dilātāre, dilātāvi, dilātātus
 diluvium: flood, destruction; singular neuter accusative from diluvium, diluviū
 dīvisae: having been divided; plural feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dividō, dividere, divisī, divisus
 dīviserunt: they divided; 3rd person plural perfect active from dividō, dividere, divisī, divisus
 Echthet: Echthet, son of Oth
 Enoch: Enoch, son of Jared
 Enos: Enosh, son of Seth
 et: and
 Ethach: Ethach, son of Aurthach
 Eurōpā: Europe; singular feminine ablative from Eurōpa, Eurōpae
 Eurōpam: Europe; singular feminine accusative from Eurōpa, Eurōpae
 ex: out of, from
 experimentum: account, experience; singular neuter accusative from experimentum, experimenti
 Ezra: Ezra, son of Izrau
 Fetebir: Fetebir, son of Ougomun
 fili: sons; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filiis: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, fili
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 Franci: the Franks
 Francus: Francus, son of Hessitiō, father of the Franks
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 Gebidi: the Gepids, an eastern Germanic tribe
 Gebidus: Gebidus, son of Armenon, father of the Gepids
 genere: offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine nominative from gens, gentis
 Gothi: Goths; plural masculine nominative from Gothus, Gothi
 Gothus: Gothus, son of Armenon, father of the Goths
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 Hessitiō: Hessitiō, son of Alānus
 Hisitiōne: Hessitiō, son of Alānus (ablative case)
 hī: to these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 Iafeth: Japheth, the son of Noah who fathered the Europeans
 Iareth: Jared, son of Mahalalel
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 invēni: I found; 2nd person singular present active imperative from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 Jobaath: Jobaath, son of Javan
 Iovan: Javan, son of Japheth
 istae: those; plural feminine nominative from iste, ista, istud
 istō: that; singular masculine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 Izrau: Izrau, son of Baath
 Lamech: Lamech, son of Methusaleh
 Latīni: the Latins
 librīs: books; plural feminine ablative from liber, libri
 Longobardi: the Lombards
 Longobardus: Longobardus, son of Armenon, father of the Lombards
 Mair: Mair, son of Ethach
 Malalehel: Mahalalel, son of Kenan
 Matusalae: Methuselah, son of Enoch
 Negue: Negue, son of Alānus
 Neguīō: Negue, son of Alānus (ablative)
 Noē: Noah, who repopulated the earth after the Flood (genitive case)
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nostrōrum: our
 orbem: world, sphere; singular masculine accusative from orbis, orbis
 ortae + sunt = rose up;
 Oth: Oth, son of Abir
 Ougomun: Ougomun, son of Thōi
 partēs: parts; plural feminine nominative from pars, partis
 per: through
 peritiā: experience, account; singular feminine accusative from peritia, peritiae
 post: behind, after, since
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus, prima, primum
 quattuor: 4
 quinque: five
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 Ra: Ra, son of Ezra
 Rōmānus: Rōmānus, son of Hessitiō, father of the Latins
 Saxō: Saxō, son of Negue, father of the Saxons
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 Sem: Shem, the son of Noah who fathered the Semitic peoples
 Seth: Seth, son of Adam
 Simeon: Simeon, son of Mair
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
 terminōs: boundaries; plural masculine accusative from terminus, termini
 Thōi: Thōi, son of Boib
 tōtam: whole, total; singular feminine accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 trāditiōne: surrender, delivering up; singular feminine ablative from trāditiō, trāditiōnis
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 Turingi: the Thuringians
 ut: so that
 Valagothi: likely the Visigoths
 Valagothus: Valagothus, son of Armenon, likely father of the Visigoths
 Vandalī: the Vandals
 Vandalus: Vandalus, son of Negue, father of the Vandals
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 veteribus: old; plural ablative from vetus, veteris (gen.), veterior -or -us, veterrimus -a -um
 veterum: of old; plural genitive from vetus, veteris (gen.), veterior -or -us, veterrimus -a -um
 vīvī: living; singular masculine genitive from vīvus, vīva, vīvum

18 Quī incolae¹ in prīmō fuērunt Brittanniae Brittōnēs ā Brūtō. Brūtus filius Hisitōnis, Hisition Alāneī, Alāneus² filius Reae Silviae, Rea Silvia filia Numā Pampiliī, filiī Ascaniī; Ascanius filius Aenēae, filiī Anchīsae, filiī Trōī, filiī Dardanī, filiī Flise, filiī Iuvānī, filiī Iafeth. Iafeth vērō habuit septem filiōs. Prīmus Gomer, ā quō Gallī; secundus Magog, ā quō Scythās et Gothōs; tertius Madāī, ā quō Mēdōs; quārtus Iuvān, ā quō Graeci; quīntus Tubal, ā quō Hibēreī et Hispānī et Itali; sextus Mosoch, ā quō Cappadocēs; septimus Tirās, ā quō Tracēs. Hī sunt filiī Iafeth filiī Noe filiī Lamech.

Et redeam³ nunc ad id, dē quō dīgressus sum.

¹*The ones dwelling first in Britain were the Britons from Brutus.*

²Note that this genealogy of Alānus differs from the one given on the previous page, a fact which the author noted.

³*And let me now return to that, from which I digressed. redeam* is a iussive subjunctive.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aeneae: of Aeneas, Trojan prince and legendary founder of Alba Longa, birthplace of Romulus and Remus (genitive case)
 Alāneī: of Alāneus, son of Rea Silvia
 Alāneus: of Alāneus
 Anchisae: Anchises, father of Aeneas
 Ascanī: of Ascanius, the son of Aeneas
 Ascanius: Ascanius, legendary king of Alba Longa, son of Aeneas (ablative or dative case)
 Brittanniae: in Britain (locative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Brūtō: Brutus; singular masculine ablative from Brūtus, Brūtī
 Brūtus: Brutus; singular masculine nominative from Brūtus, Brūtī
 Cappadoces: the Cappadocians
 Dardani: of Dardanus, father of the Trojans
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 digressus sum = I digressed; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from digredior, digredi, digressus sum
 et: and
 filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae
 fili: sons; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 Flise: of Flis (?) the son of Juvan
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 Galli: Gauls; plural masculine nominative from Gallus, Galli
 Gomer: Gomer, son of Japheth
 Gothōs: Goth; (tribe of Northern Germany); plural masculine accusative from Gothus, Gothi
 Graeci: Greek; the Greeks (pl.); singular masculine genitive from Graecus, Graeci
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habēō, habēre, habui, habitus
 hī: these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 Hiberēi: the Iberians
 Hispāni: Hispanics; plural masculine nominative from Hispanus, Hispana, Hispanum
 Hision: Hision, son of Alāneus, father of Brūtus
 Hisionis: of Hision, son of Alāneus, father of Brūtus
 Iafeth: Japheth, father of the Europeans
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incolae: inhabitants; singular common genitive from incola, incolae
 Itali: Italian; plural masculine nominative from Italus, Itali
 Juvan: Juvan, son of Japheth
 Iuvani: of Juvan, son of Japheth
 Lamech: Lamech, father of Noah
 Madāi: of Madāus, son of Japheth, father of the Medes
 Magog: Magog, son of Japheth, father of the Scythians and Goths
 Medōs: the Medes
 Mosoch: Mosoch, son of Japheth, father of the Cappadocians
 Noe: of Noah, who repopulated the earth after the Flood
 Numā: Numā Pampiliī, son of Ascanius
 nunc: now
 Pampiliī: Numā Pampiliī, son of Ascanius
 primō: first; singular masculine ablative from primus, prīma, primum
 primus: first; singular masculine nominative from primus, prīma, primum
 quārtus: fourth
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quīntus: fifth
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 Rea: Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliī
 Reae: of Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliī
 redeam: I return; 1st person singular present active subjunctive from redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
 Scythās: the Scythians
 secundus: second; singular masculine nominative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, bīnī -ae -a, bis
 septem: seven
 septimus: seventh
 sextus: sixth
 Silvia: Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliī
 Silviae: of Rea Silvia, daughter of Numā Pampiliī
 sum: I am; 1st person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, ternī -ae -a, ter
 Tirās: Tirās, father of the Thracians
 Tracēs: Thracians;

19 Rōmānī autem, dum acciperent dominium tōtīus mundī, ac Brittannōs mīsērunt lēgātōs, ut obsidēs et cēsum acciperent ab illīs, sicut accipiēbant ab ūniversīs regiōnibus et īsulīs. Brittannī autem, cum essent¹ tyrannī et tumidī, lēgātiōnem Rōmānōrum contempsērunt. Tunc Iūlius Caesar, cum accēpisset singulāre imperium prīmus et obtinuisset, irātus est valdē et vēnit ad Britanniam cum sexāgintā ciulīs et tenuit in ōstium Tamesis, in quō naufragium perpessae² sunt nāvēs illīus, dum ipse pugnābat apud Dolobellum³, quī erat prōcōnsul rēgī Brittannīcō, quī et ipse Bellīnus vocābātur, et filius erat Minocannī, quī occupāvit omnēs īsulās Tyrrēnī⁴ maris et Iūlius reversus est sine victōriā caesīs mīlitibus et frāctīs nāvibus.

¹*The Britons, however, having been (filled) of tyranny and pride, condemned the embassy of the Romans. essent* is used because it is a cum circumstantial clause.

²*In which his ships endured shipwreck.*

³*When he was fighting with Dolobellus, who was proconsul to the Brittanic king.*

⁴*Who occouped all the islands of the Tyrrhenian Sea.* The author may have been referring to a different sea, as there is no record (besides this) of a British king occupying islands in the Tyrrhenian Sea, which is just off the western coast of Italy.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 accēpisset: he had received; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 acciperent: they received; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 accipiēbant: they were receiving, they were accepting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 apud: at, by, near, with
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Bellinus: a British king, the son of Minocannus
 Brittanni: Britons
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Britannicō: Britannic (dative case)
 Brittannōs: Britons (accusative case)
 Caesar: Caesar; singular masculine nominative from Caesar, Caesaris
 caesis: slaughter; plural ablative perfect passive participle from caedo, caedere, caecidi, caesus
 cēsum: census; singular masculine accusative from cēsus, cēsus
 ciulis: longship; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 contempserunt: they contemned, they held in contempt; 3rd person plural perfect active from contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus
 cum: with
 Dolobellum: Dolobellus (?) British proconsul
 dominium: dominion; singular neuter accusative from dominium, domini
 dum: while, as long as, until
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 essent: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 frāctis: having been broken; plural ablative perfect passive participle from frangō, frangere, frēgi, fractus
 illis: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter nominative from imperium, imperi(i)
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from insula, insulae
 insulis: islands; plural feminine ablative from insula, insulae
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 irātus: angry; singular masculine nominative from irātus, -a -um
 Iulius: Julius; singular masculine nominative from Julius, Juli
 lēgationem: legate, embassy; singular feminine accusative from lēgatio, lēgationis
 lēgātōs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine accusative from lēgātus, lēgātī
 maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
 militibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from miles, militis
 Minocanni: Minocannus, a British king
 misērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittere, mittere, misī, missus
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 naufragium: shipwreck; singular neuter accusative from naufragium, naufragi
 nāvēs: boats; plural feminine nominative from nāvis, nāvis
 nāvibus: boats; plural feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis
 obsidēs: hostages; plural masculine accusative from obses, obsidis
 obtinuisset: he had obtained; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from obtineō, obtinere, obtinui, obtentus
 occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 ōstium: mouth; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstii
 perpressae: perpressae sunt = they endured; plural feminine nominative perfect participle from perpetior, perpeti, perpressus
 primus: first; singular masculine nominative from primus, prima, primum
 prōcōsul: proconsul, military commander; singular masculine nominative from prōcōsul, prōcōsulis
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from pugno, pugnare, pugnāvi, pugnātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 reversus: reversus + est = he returned
 Rōmānī: Romans
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sicut: as, same as, like
 sine: without
 singulāre: solitary, peerless; singular neuter accusative from singulāris, singulāris, singulāre
 Tamesis: of the Thames river
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenere, tenui, tentus
 tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 tumidi: swollen, pompous; singular masculine genitive from tumidus, tumida, tumidum
 tunc: then
 tyranni: tyrants; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyranni
 Tyrreni: of the Tyrrhenian. They Tyrrhenian Sea lies off the west coast of Italy
 ūniversis: whole, entire; plural ablative from ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
 ut: so that
 valdē: very
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 victōriā: victory; singular feminine ablative from victōria, victōriae
 vocābatur: he was called; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

20 Et iterum post spatium trium annōrum vēnit cum magnō exercitū trecentisque ciūlis et pervēnit usque ad ōstium flūminis, quod vocātur Tamesis. Et ibī iniērunt bellum et multī cecidērunt dē equīs mīlitibusque suīs, quia suprā¹ dictus prōcōsul posuerat sudēs ferreōs et sēmen² bellicōsum, id est Cetilou³, in vada flūminis. Discrīmen⁴ magnum fuit mīlitibus Rōmānōrum haec ars invīsibilis, et discessērunt sine pāce in illā vice. Gestum est bellum tertiō iuxtā locum, quī dīcitur Trinovantum. Et accēpit Iūlius imperium Brittannicae gentis 47 annīs ante nātivitātem Chrīstī, ab initiō autem mundī 5215.

¹*The above-stated proconsul.*

²The *war-like seed* most likely refers to caltrops, which are small, spiked devices designed to be scattered like seed and always have a spike facing up. This is the interpretation taken in “Unpublished Geraldine Documents: The Whyte Knight.” The Journal of the Royal Historical and Archaeological Association of Ireland 5, no. 50 (1882): 640–730. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25506830>. See also below footnote.

³This is a likely a Welsh word used to clarify what *sēmen bellicōsum* means. Rebecca Thomas glosses it as “battle-seed” (Thomas, Rebecca. *History and Identity in Early Medieval Wales*. Boydell & Brewer, 2022. <https://doi.org/10.2307/j.ctv24cns98>.) Homer Nearing relates three different interpretations: (1) that it means chausses-trap (French for caltrop), (2) that it refers to British warriors, not caltrops, or (3) that *cetilou* is derived from coethawl (stake) (Nearing, Homer. “The Legend of Julius Caesar’s British Conquest.” *PMLA* 64, no. 4 (1949): 889–929. <https://doi.org/10.2307/459639>.)

⁴*This invisible art was a great danger to the soldiers of the Romans.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 accēpit: he received, he took; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōrum: of years; plural masculine genitive from annus, annī
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 ars: art, skill; singular feminine nominative from ars, artis
 autem: but, however, moreover
 bellicōsum: warlike; singular neuter nominative from bellicōsus, bellicōsa -um, bellicōsior -or -us, bellicōsissimus -a -um
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum, bellī
 Britannicae: of the Brittanica (genitive case)
 ceciderunt: they fell; 3rd person plural perfect active from cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus
 Cetilou: probably a Welsh term meaning caltrop
 Christi: annointed one, Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christi
 ciulis: longship; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 discesserunt: they departed; 3rd person plural perfect active from discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus
 discrimen: danger, risk; singular neuter nominative from discrimen, discriminis
 equīs: horses; plural masculine ablative from equus, equī
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceo, exercere, exercui, exercitus
 ferreōs: made of iron; plural masculine accusative from ferreus, ferrea, ferreum
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
 gestum: gestum est = it was carried out; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from
 haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc
 ibi: there, then
 id: it
 illa: that; singular feminine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter nominative from imperium, imperi(ī)
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 initiō: beginning, entrance; singular neuter ablative from initium, initii
 iniērunt: they entered; 3rd person plural perfect active from ineō, inire, inivī(ī), initus
 invīsibilis: invisible; singular feminine nominative from invisibilis, invisibile
 iterum: again
 Iūlius: Julius; singular masculine nominative from Julius, Juli
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī
 māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 māgnus: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 militibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from miles, militis
 multī: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nātivitatem: birth, nativity; singular feminine accusative from nātivitās, nātivitātis
 ōstium: mouth (of a river); singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstii
 pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
 pervenit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 post: behind, after, since
 posuerat: he had put; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
 prōcōsul: proconsul, military commander; singular masculine nominative from prōcōsul, prōcōsulis
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 sēmen: seed; singular neuter nominative from sēmen, sēminis
 sine: without
 spatium: space; singular neuter accusative from spatium, spatii
 sudēs: stakes, logs; plural masculine accusative from sudis, sudis
 suīs: their; plural ablative of suus
 suprā: above, beyond, before, over
 Tamesis: Thames river
 tertiō: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trecentīs: three hundred; plural masculine ablative from trecentī -ae -a, trecentessimus -a -um, trecenti -ae -a, trecentie (n)s
 Trinovantum: the place of a battle
 trium: three; plural genitive from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vada: shallows; plural neuter accusative from vadum, vadi
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vice: time, instance, turn; singular feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
 vocātur: is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Iūlius igitur prīmus in Brittanniam pervēnit et rēgnū et gentem tenuit, et in
honōrem illius Quīntilem mēsem Iūlium dēbere¹ Rōmānī dēcrēvērunt vocārī. Et
īdibus Mārtiīs Gāius Iūlius Caesar in cūriā occīditur, tenente Octāviānō Augustō
monarchiam tōtius mundi, et cēsum ā Brittanniā ipse sōlus accēpit, ut Virgilius² ait:
Purpurea intextī tollant aulaea Britannī.

¹*And in his honor the Romans decreed the month Quintilis should be called July.* Quintilis was the fifth month of the year (which used to start in March, making July the fifth month) and was renamed in honor of Julius Caesar.

²*As Virgil says: they raise the purple curtains embroidered with Britons.* This is a quote from Georgics 3:25. It appears that the idea is that the Britons have been "woven in" to the regal story of the Roman empire; in fact, that has been what the author has been doing in the last several sections with genealogies linking the Britons to the Trojans through Brutus.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 accēpit: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ait: he said; 3rd person singular present active from aio, -, -
 Augustō: Augustus; (title of Octavius Caesar, Emperor, 27 BC-14
 AD); singular masculine ablative from Augustus, Augusti
 aulaea: curtains; plural neuter accusative from aulaeum, aulaei
 Britanni: Britons (usu, pl.); plural masculine nominative from
 Britannus, Britanni
 Britannia: Britain
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Caesar: Caesar; singular masculine nominative from Caesar,
 Caesaris
 cēsum: tribute, census; singular masculine accusative from
 census, cēsus
 cūriā: court, council, senate; singular feminine ablative from
 cūria, cūriae
 dēbēre: to owe, to ought; present infinitive from dēbeō, dēbere,
 dēbui, dēbitus
 dēcrēverunt: they decreed; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus
 et: and
 Gāius: Gāius (Iūlius Caesar)
 gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, gentis
 honorem: honor; singular masculine accusative from honor,
 honōris
 īdibus: Ides; plural feminine ablative from Idus, Idus
 igitur: therefore
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intexti: having been embroidered, woven in; singular masculine
 genitive perfect passive participle from intexo, intexere,
 intexui, intextus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 Iūlium: Julius; (Roman gens name); (C. ~ Caesar 102-44 BC);
 singular masculine accusative from Julius, Juli
 Iūlius: Julius; singular masculine nominative from Julius, Juli
 Mārtiis: March (matches īdibus to mean 'Ides of March'); plural
 ablative from Martius, Martia, Martium
 mēsem: month; singular masculine accusative from mēnsis,
 mēnsis
 monarchiam: monarchy; singular feminine accusative from
 monarchia, monarchiae
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 occiditur: he is killed; 3rd person singular present passive from
 occidō, occidere, occidi, occisus
 Octāviānō: Octavius; singular masculine ablative from Octavius,
 Octavii
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 pervenio, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
 prima, primum
 purpūrea: purple; plural neuter accusative from purpūreus,
 purpūrea, purpūreum
 Quintilem: July; renamed Julius in 44 BC; singular common
 accusative from Quintilis, Quintilis, Quintile
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum,
 rēgni
 Rōmāni: Romans
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 solum (gen -ius)
 tenente: holding; singular ablative present participle from
 teneō, tenere, tenui, tentus
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 teneō, tenere, tenui, tentus
 tollant: they lift up; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive
 from tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus
 tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum
 (gen -ius)
 ut: so that
 Virgilius: Virgil
 vocārī: to be called; present passive infinitive from vocō, vocāre,
 vocāvi, vocātus

21 Secundus post hunc Claudius imperātor vēnit et in Brittanniā imperāvit annīs quadrāgintā octo post adventum Chrīstī et strāgem et bellum fēcit magnum nōn absque¹ dētrīmentō mīlitum, tamen victor fuit in Brittanniā. Et postea cum ciūlis perrēxit ad Orcadēs īnsulās et subiēcit sibi² et fēcit eās tribūtāriās. In tempore illius quiēvit³ dare cēsum Rōmānīs ā Brittanniā, sed Brittannīcīs imperātōribus redditum est. Rēgnāvit annīs 13 mēnsibus 8. Cuius monumentum in Mogantiā apud Longobardōs ostenditur: dum ad Rōmam ībat, ibī dēfūctus⁴ est.

22 Post 168 annōs post adventum Chrīstī, Lūcius Brittannicus rēx cum omnibus rēgulīs tōtīus Brittannicae gentis baptismum suscēpit missā⁵ lēgātiōne ab imperātōre Rōmānōrum et ā Pāpā Rōmānō Eucharistō.

¹*And not without harm of the soliders.* This means that Claudius's soldiers got hurt during their battle.

²*And subjected (them) to himself.*

³*In that time he ceased to give tribute to the Romans from the British, but returned it to the British rulers.*

⁴*There he died.*

⁵*After 168 years after the advent of Christ, Lūcius the British king with all the rulers of all of the people of Britain undertook baptism, a delegation having been sent from the emperor of the Romans and from the Roman Pope Eucharistus.* The name of the Pope given as Eucharistus is almost certainly a scribal error and should refer to Pope Eleutherius (see Mommsen's critical text, page 115, note 12). *missā ... Eucharistō* is an ablative absolute.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 abs: from, out of, by, since
 absque: without
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adventum: arrival, advent; singular neuter nominative perfect
 passive participle from adveniō, advenire, advēni, adventus
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 apud: at, by, near
 baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from
 baptismum, baptisimi
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter accusative from bellum,
 belli
 Brittannia: Britain
 Brittannicae: of the Brittannic (genitive case)
 Brittannicis: Brittannic (ablative case)
 Brittannicus: British
 cēsum: census, tribute; singular masculine accusative from
 cēsus, cēsus
 Christi: of Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus,
 Christi
 ciulīs: longships; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from
 ceola, ceolae
 Claudius: Claudius, Roman emperor; singular masculine
 nominative from Claudius, Claudi
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
 cum: with
 dare: to give; present infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 defunctus: defunctus est = he died; singular masculine
 nominative perfect participle from defungor, defungi,
 defunctus sum
 dētrimentō: harm, detriment; singular neuter ablative from
 dētrimentum, dētrimentī
 dum: while
 eās: their; plural feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 Eucharisto: Pope Eleutherius, see footnote 5 on the facing page.
 fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from facio,
 facere, fēcī, factus
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from gēns, gentis
 hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 ibat: he was going; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 eo, ire, ivi(ii), itus
 ibi: there, then
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from
 imperātor, imperātōris
 imperātōre: commander; singular masculine ablative from
 imperātor, imperātōris
 imperātōribus: commanders; plural masculine ablative from
 imperātor, imperātōris
 imperāvit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from insula, insulae
 lēgatiōne: delegation, legate, embassy; singular feminine
 ablative from lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis
 Longobardōs: Lombards
 Lūcius: Lucius, a British king; singular masculine nominative
 from Lucius, Luci
 māgnū: large; singular neuter accusative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mēnsibus: months; plural masculine ablative from mēnsis,
 mēnsis
 militum: of soldiers; plural masculine genitive from miles, militis
 missa: having been sent; singular feminine ablative perfect
 passive participle from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
 Mogantiā: Mogontiacum, modern-day Mainz, Germany
 monumentum: monument, memorial, tomb; singular neuter
 nominative from monumentum, monumentī
 nōn: not
 octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 Orcaes: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of
 Scotland
 ostenditur: it is displayed; 3rd person singular present passive
 from ostendo, ostendere, ostendī, ostensus
 Pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Papa, Papae
 perrēxit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus
 post: behind, after, since
 postea: thereafter, later
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quīēvit: he ceased; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 quīēscō, quīēscere, quīēvī, quīētus
 redditum: redditum est = was returned; singular neuter
 nominative perfect passive participle from reddō, reddere,
 reddidī, redditus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgulīs: rules, principles; plural feminine ablative from rēgula,
 rēgulae
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Romam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Roma, Romae
 Rōmānis: Romans; plural dative from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 rōmānō: Roman; singular masculine dative from Rōmānūs, -a
 -um
 rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs,
 -a -um
 secundus: following; singular masculine nominative from duo
 -ae o, secundus -a -um, bīnī -ae -a, bis
 sed: but
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 strāgem: overthrow, destruction; singular feminine accusative
 from strāgēs, strāgis
 subiēcīt: he subjected; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 subicio, subicere, subjeci, subjectus
 suscēpit: he undertook; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
 tamen: however
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
 tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum
 (gen -ius)
 tribūtāriās: tributaries, those who give tribute; plural feminine
 accusative from tribūtārius, tribūtāria, tribūtārium
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor,
 victōris

23 Tertius fuit Sevērus, quī trānsfretāvit ad Brittannōs; ubi, ut receptās¹ prōvinciās ab incursiōne barbaricā faceret tūtiōrēs, mūrum et aggerem ā marī usque ad mare per lātitudinem Brittanniae, id est per 132 mīlia passuum dēdūxit, et vocātur Brittannīcō sermōne Guaul. Proptereā iussit fierī inter Brittōnēs et Pictōs et Scottōs, quia Scottī ab occidente et Pictī ab aquilōne ūnanimiter pugnābant contrā Brittōnēs, nam et ipsī pācem inter sē habēbant; et nōn multō post intrā Brittanniam Sevērus moritur.

24 Quārtus fuit Karitius imperātor et tyrannus, quī et ipse in Brittanniam vēnit tyrannide. Quī proptereā tyrannus fuit prō occisiōne Sevērī et cum omnibus ducibus Rōmānicae gentis, quī erant cum eō in Brittanniā, trānsverberāvit omnēs rēgulōs Brittannōrum et vindicāvit valdē Sevērū ab illīs et purpuram² Brittanniae occupāvit.

¹*So that the received provinces might be made safer from barbaric incursion.* *faceret* is subjunctive because of the *ut* clause.

²*And he occupied the royalty of Britain.* Here *purpuram* is an idiom for royalty.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aggerem: bulwark, rampart; singular masculine accusative from agger, aggeris
 aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō, aquilōnis
 barbaricā: barbaric; plural neuter ablative from barbaricum, barbarici
 Brittanniā: Britain (ablative case)
 Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Britannicō: Britannic (ablative case)
 Brittannōs: Britons (accusative case)
 Brittannōrum: of the Britons
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine accusative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 dedūxit: it stretched; 3rd person singular perfect active from dedūcō, dedūcere, dedūxi, deductus
 ducibus: leaders; plural masculine ablative from dux, ducis
 eō: him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 faceret: he did; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from faciō, facere, feci, factus
 fieri: to happen, to occur; person present active from fiō, fieri, factus sum
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
 Guaul: the Welsh (?) name of the wall the Romans built across Britain. This is likely Hadrian's Wall, which stood 12 feet tall and stretches 73 miles across northern England
 habēbant: they had; 3rd person plural imperfect active from habēō, habēre, habui, habitus
 id: it
 illis: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from imperātor, imperātoris
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incursiōne: attack; singular feminine ablative from incursiō, incursiōnis
 inter: between, among, during
 intrā: within, between, during
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipsi: itself; sing. dative or plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus
 Karitius: a Roman ruler of Britain, likely Marcus Aurelius Mausaeus Carausius
 lātitudinem: breadth, width, latitude; singular feminine accusative from lātitudō, lātitudinis
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 mari: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 milia: one thousand
 moritur: he dies; 3rd person singular present from morior, mori, mortuum
 multō: much, many; singular masculine ablative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mūrum: wall; singular masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī
 nam: yes, truly
 nōn: not
 occidente: west; singular masculine ablative from occidēs, occidentis
 occisiōne: massacre, slaughter, murder; singular feminine ablative from occisiō, occisiōnis
 occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis
 passuum: of steps, of paces, milia passuum = miles; plural masculine genitive from passus, passūs
 per: through
 Picti: Picts, members of a Scottish tribe
 Pictōs: Picts, members of a Scottish tribe;
 post: behind, after, since
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 propterea: because of, that's why
 prōvinciās: provinces, commands; plural feminine accusative from prōvincia, prōvinciae
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus
 purpuram: purple (garment), royalty; singular feminine accusative from purpura, purpurae
 quārtus: fourth
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 receptās: having been received; plural feminine accusative perfect passive participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
 rēgulōs: princes; plural masculine accusative from rēgulus, rēguli
 Rōmānicāe: Romanic; singular feminine genitive from Rōmānicus, Rōmānica, Rōmānicum
 Scotti: Scots
 Scottōs: Scots
 se: himself
 sermōne: speech; singular masculine ablative from sermō, sermōnis
 Severi: of Sevērus, a Roman commander of Britain who was murdered.
 Sevērūm: Sevērus, a Roman commander of Britain who was murdered.
 Sevērū: Sevērus, a Roman commander of Britain who was murdered.
 tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trānsfretāvit: he passed over the sea, ferried; 3rd person singular perfect active from trānsfretō, trānsfretāre, trānsfretāvī, trānsfretātus
 trānsverberāvit: he pierced through; 3rd person singular perfect active from trānsverberō, trānsverberāre, trānsverberāvī, trānsverberātus
 tūtiorēs: safer; plural common nominative from tūtus, tūta -um, tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
 tyrannide: tyranny; singular feminine ablative from tyrannis, tyrannidis
 tyrannus: tyrant; singular masculine nominative from tyrannus, tyranni
 ubi: where, when if
 ūnanimiter: unanimously, harmoniously
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 valdē: very
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vindicāvit: he vindicated, avenged; 3rd person singular perfect active from vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

25 Quīntus Cōstantīnus Cōstantīnī magnī filius fuit et ibī moritur et sepulcrum illius mōnstrātur iuxtā urbem, quae vocātur Cair Segeint, ut litterae, quae sunt in lapide tumulī, ostendunt. Et ipse sēmināvit¹ tria sēmina, id est aurī argentī, aerisque, in pavīmentō supradictae cīvitātis, ut nūllus pauper in eā habitāret umquam, et vocātur aliō nōmine Minmantōn.

26 Sextus Maximus imperātor rēgnāvit in Brittanniā. Ā tempore illius cōsulēs esse² coepērunt et Caesarēs numquam appellātī sunt postea. Et sāctus Martīnus in tempore illius clāruit in virtūtibus et signīs et cum eō locūtus³ est.

¹*And he himself sowed three seeds, that is of gold and of silver and of bronze, in the pavement of the above-said city, so that no poor man would ever live in it, and it is called by another name: Minmantōn. It's unclear what is meant by the seeds of precious metals.*

²*From his time consuls began to be and (they) were never called Caesars afterwards.*

³*And he spoke with him.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 aeris: of bronze; singular neuter genitive from aes, aeris
 aliō: other; singular masculine ablative from alius, alia, aliud
 appellātī: appellātī sunt = were called; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from
 argentī: of silver; singular neuter genitive from argentum,
 argentī
 aurī: of gold; singular neuter genitive from aurum, aurī
 Brittannia: Britain
 Caesarēs: Caesars; plural masculine accusative from Caesar,
 Caesaris
 Cair: Cair Segeint, which is Segontium, a Roman fort in
 Gwynedd, North Wales
 cīvitātis: city; singular feminine genitive from cīvitās, cīvitātis
 clāruīt: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from claresco, clarescere, clari, -
 coepērunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum
 Cōstantīni: of Constantine; singular masculine genitive from
 Constantinus, Constantini
 Cōstantīnus: Constantinus, possibly Constantine II, perhaps
 conflated with Constantius Chlorus; singular masculine
 nominative from Constantinus, Constantini
 cōsulēs: consuls; plural masculine nominative from cōsul,
 cōsulis
 cum: with
 eā: in it; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or
 acc. from is, ea, id
 eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 esse: to be
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 habitāret: he inhabited; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 ibī: there, then
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from
 imperātor, imperātōris
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 iuxtā: near
 lapide: stone; singular masculine ablative from lapis, lapidis
 litterae: letters, literature; plural feminine nominative from
 littera, litterae
 locūtus: locūtus est = he spoke
 māgnī: large; singular masculine genitive from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Martinus: Saint Martin
 Maximus: Magnus Maximus, emperor of the western Roman
 empire from 383 to 388
 Minmanton: another name for Cair Segeint
 mōnstrātur: it is demarked; 3rd person singular present passive
 from mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus
 moritur: he dies; 3rd person singular present from morior, morī,
 mortuum
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nullus: no, none, not any; singular masculine nominative from
 nullus, nulla, nullum (gen -ius)
 numquam: never
 ostendunt: they show; 3rd person plural present active from
 ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostensus
 pauper: poor man; singular nominative from pauper, pauperis
 (gen.), pauperior -or -us, pauperrimus -a -um
 pavimentō: floor, pavement, tiling; singular neuter ablative from
 pavimentum, pavimentī
 postea: thereafter, later
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 Quintus: fifth
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 sānctus: holy, saint
 Segeint: Segontium, a Roman fort in Gwynedd, North Wales
 sēmina: seeds; plural neuter accusative from sēmen, sēminis
 sēmināvit: he planted; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 sēminō, sēmināre, sēmināvī, sēminātus
 sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter nominative from
 sepulchrum, sepulchrī
 sextus: sixth
 signis: signs, miracles; plural neuter ablative from signum, signī
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 suprādictae: having been said above; singular feminine genitive
 perfect passive participle from suprādicō, suprādicere,
 suprādixī, suprādictus

tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
 tria: three
 tumulī: mound, hill; singular masculine genitive from tumulus,
 tumulī
 umquam: ever
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 ut: so that
 virtūtibus: virtues, manliness, power; plural feminine ablative
 from virtūs, virtūtis
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

27 Septimus imperātor rēgnāvit in Brittanniā Maximiānus. Ipse perrēxit cum omnibus mīlitibus Brittōnum ā Brittanniā et occīdit Grātiānum rēgem Rōmānōrum et imperium tenuit tōtīus Eurōpae et nōluit dīmittere mīlitēs, quī perrēxērunt cum eō, ad Brittanniam ad uxōrēs suās et ad filiōs suōs et ad possessiōnēs suās, sed dēdit illīs multās regiōnēs ā stāgnō quod est super verticem Montis Iovis¹ usque ad cīvitatē, quae vocātur Cant Guic, et usque ad cumulum occidentālem, id est, Cruc Ochident. Hī sunt Brittōnēs Armorīcī² et numquam reversī sunt hūc usque in hodiernum diem. Propter hoc Brittannia occupāta est ab extrāneīs gentibus et cīvēs expulsī sunt, usque dum Deus auxilium dederit illīs.

In veterī trādiōne seniōrum nostrōrum septem imperātōrēs fuērunt ā Rōmānīs in Brittanniā: Rōmānī autem dīcunt novem. Octāvus fuit alius Sevērus, quī aliquandō in Brittanniā manēbat, aliquandō ad Rōmam ībat et ibī dēfūctus est. Nōnus fuit Cōstantius. Ipse rēgnāvit sexdecim annīs in Brittanniā et in sextodecīmō annō imperiī suī obiit in Brittanniā.

¹The place-names in this sentence are uncertain. Based on the next sentence, they are likely places in Brittany, a northern part of modern-day France that lies just across the English channel.

²*These are the Britons of Armorica and they never returned here, even up until today.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquandō: some day
 alius: other; singular masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Armorici: of Armorica, modern-day Brittany
 autem: but, however, moreover
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium, auxilii
 Britannia: in Britain (ablative case)
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittonēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Brittonum: Briton, inhabitant of Britain; (usu. pl.); plural masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Cant Guic: a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 cives: citizens; plural common nominative from cīvis, cīvis
 civitatem: civilization; singular feminine accusative from civitās, civitātis
 Cōstantius: Constantius
 Cruc Ochidient: a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 cum: with
 cumulum: heap, pile; singular masculine accusative from cumulus, cumuli
 dederit: he will give; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 defunctus: defunctus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from defungor, defungi, defunctus sum
 Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei
 dicunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diē
 dimittere: to dismiss, to send away; present infinitive from dimittō, dimittere, dimisī, dimissus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eō: in it, singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 Eurōpae: of Europe; singular feminine genitive from Eurōpa, Eurōpae
 expulsi: expulsi sunt = they were driven out; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 extraneis: foreign; plural ablative from extraneus, extranea, extraneum
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 fuerunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from gēns, gentis
 Grātianum: Grātian, emperor of the Western Roman Empire from 367 to 383
 Guic: Cant Guic, a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 hic: these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hūc: toward here
 ibat: he was going; 3rd person singular imperfect active from eo, ire, ivi(ii), itus
 ibi: there, then
 id: it
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from imperātor, imperātōris
 imperātōrēs: commander; plural masculine nominative from imperātor, imperātōris
 imperiī: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter genitive from imperium, imperi(i)
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter nominative from imperium, imperi(i)
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 Iovis: Mount Jupiter, an unknown mountain possibly in Brittany
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 manēbat: he was remaining; 3rd person singular imperfect active from manēo, manēre, mānsī, mānsus
 Maximianus: a ruler in Britain
 militēs: soldiers; plural masculine accusative from miles, militis
 militibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from miles, militis
 montis: mountains; singular masculine genitive from mōns, montis
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nōluit: he didn't want; 3rd person singular perfect active from nōlo, nolle, nōluī, -
 nōnus: 9th
 nostrōrum: our
 novem: nine;
 numquam: never
 obiit: he died; 3rd person singular perfect active from obo, obire, obiī, obitus
 occidentālem: western; singular common accusative from occidentālis, occidentālis, occidentāle
 occidit: he killed, 3rd person singular perfect from occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus
 occupāta: having been seized; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from
 Ochidient: Cruc Ochidient, a city, likely in modern-day Brittany
 octāvus: eighth
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 perrexerunt: they proceeded; 3rd person plural perfect active from pergō, pergere, perrexī, perrectus
 perrexit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from pergō, pergere, perrexī, perrectus
 possessionēs: properties; plural feminine accusative from possessio, possessionis
 propter: because of, near
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 reversi: reversi sunt = they returned
 Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
 Rōmāni: Romans
 Rōmānis: Romans; plural ablative from Rōmānus, -a -um
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānus, -a -um
 sed: but
 seniōrum: of the elders; plural genitive from senex, senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
 septem: seven
 septimus: seventh
 Severus: Severus, a Roman commander
 sexdecim: sixteen
 sextodecimō: sixteenth
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from stagnum, stagnī
 suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
 sui: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
 super: above, on top of
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 trāditiōne: tradition; singular feminine ablative from trāditiō, trāditiōnis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 uxōrēs: wives; plural feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
 verticem: peak; singular masculine accusative from vertex, verticis
 veteri: old; singular ablative from vetus, veteris (gen.), veterior -or -us, veterrimus -a -um
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

28 Hūcusque regnavērunt Rōmānī apud Brittones 408 annīs. Brittōnēs autem dēiēcērunt rēgnum Rōmānōrum neque cēsum dedērunt illīs neque rēgēs illōrum accēpērunt, ut rēgnārent super eōs, neque Rōmānī ausī¹ sunt, ut venīrent Brittanniam ad rēgnandum amplius, quia ducēs illōrum Brittōnēs occīderant.

¹*Neither did the Romans dare to come to Britain to reign more, because the Britons killed their leaders.*

accēpērunt: they accepted, they received; 3rd person plural perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amplius: more, ampler, larger; singular neuter nominative from amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, anni
 apud: at, by, near
 ausī: ausī sunt = they dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausus
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittonēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 cēsum: tribute, census; singular masculine accusative from cēsus, cēsus
 dedērunt: they gave; 3rd person plural perfect active from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dēiēcērunt: they overthrew; 3rd person plural perfect active from dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 hūcūque: up to this point
 illīs: those; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 neque: not, not either
 occiderant: they killed; 3rd person plural perfect from occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus
 quia: because
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgnandum: reigning; singular neuter nominative future passive participle from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnārent: they had reigned; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 regnavērunt: they reigned; 3rd person plural perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgni
 Rōmānī: Romans
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 super: above, on top of
 ut: so that
 venirent: they came; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus

29 Iterum repetendus¹ est sermō dē Maximiānō tyrannō. Grātiānus cum frātre Valentiānō regnavit 6 annīs et Ambrosius Mediolānēnsis epīscopus clārus habētur in catholicōrum dogmate. Valentiānus cum Theodosiō rēgnāvit annīs 8. Synodus² Cōstantīnopolim colligitur ā 318 patribus, in quā omnēs haeresēs damnantur. Hieronyum tum presbyter Bethleem tōtō mundō clāruit. Dum Grātiānus imperium regēbat in tōtō mundō, in Brittanniā per sēditionem mīlitum Maximus imperātor factus est. Quī mox dum in Galliās trānsfretāret, Grātiānus, Parāssis³ Meroblaudis magistrī mīlitum prōditiōne, superātus est et fugiēns Lugdūnī captus atque occīsus est. Maximus Victōrem filium suum cōsortem fēcit. Martīnus Turonēnsis epīscopus in magnīs virtūtibus clāruit. Post multum intervāllum temporis ā Valentīniānō et Theodosiō cōsulibus, in tertiō ab Avvilevā lapide,⁴ spoliātus indūmentīs rēgiīs, sistitur et capite damnātur. Cuius filius Victor eōdem annō ab Argabaste comite interfectus est in Galliā.

¹*Again the topic of Maximus the tyrant should be returned to. repetendus is a gerundive, giving it the sense of "should".*

²*The Synod in Constantinople is gathered from 318 fathers, in which all heresies are condemned.* This refers to the first Council of Nicea in 325 AD. 318 bishops attended it, and this fact is often used to refer to the council. While the author states that all heresies were condemned, this is hyperbolic; the council mainly focused on affirming that the Son is of the same substance as the Father (and was not created, as the heresy of Arius maintained) and also on rejecting the Jewish calculation of Passover for the celebration of the Paschal Feast (Easter).

³*Gratian, in Paris by the sedition of Merobaudes, captain of the soliders, was overcome, and fleeing to Lyons was captured and killed.* I added the commas after *Grātiānus* and *prōditiōne* to make the text easier to parse.

⁴*At the third milestone from Aquileia, spoiling his royal garments, he (presumably Maximus) is stopped and beheaded.* I added commas after *cōsulibus* and *lapide* to make the sentence easier to parse.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 Ambrosius: St. Ambrose of Milan
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Argabaste: Arbogast, a Roman officer of Frankish origin who killed Victor, the son of Magnus Maximus (ablative case)
 atque: and
 Avvileva: Aquileia, Italy
 Bethleem: Bethlehem
 Britannia: Britain
 capite: head; singular neuter ablative from caput, capitis
 captus: captus est = was seized, captured; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from capiō, capere, cēpi, captus
 Catholicōrum: Catholic; plural common genitive from catholicus, catholici
 clāruī: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active from claresco, clarescere, clarui, -
 clārus: clear, bright, famous; singular masculine nominative from clārus, clāra -um, clārīor -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 colligitur: is assembled; 3rd person singular present passive from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus
 comite: comrade; singular common ablative from comes, comitis
 cōsortem: consort; singular common accusative from cōsors, cōsortis
 Cōstantinopolim: Constantinople; singular feminine accusative from Constantinopolis, Constantinopolis
 cōsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from cōsul, cōsulis
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
 cum: with
 damnantur: they are condemned; 3rd person plural present passive from damnō, damnāre, damnāvi, damnātus
 damnatur: he is condemned; 3rd person singular present passive from damnō, damnāre, damnāvi, damnātus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dogmate: doctrine, dogma; singular neuter ablative from dogma, dogmatis
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eōdem: the same; (pronoun)
 episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative from episcopus, episcopi
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 factus: factus est = was made; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, feci, factus
 fecit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, feci, factus
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 frātre: brother; singular masculine ablative from frāter, frātris
 fugiēns: fleeing; singular nominative present participle from fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitus
 Galliā: Gaul; singular feminine nominative from Gallia, Galliae
 Galliās: Gaul; plural feminine accusative from Gallia, Galliae
 Grātianus: Gratian, emperor of the Western Roman Empire from 367 to 383
 habētur: it is had; 3rd person singular present passive from habeo, habere, habui, habitus
 haeresēs: heresies; plural feminine nominative from haeresis, haeresis
 Hieronymus: Saint Jerome
 imperātor: commander; singular masculine nominative from imperātor, imperātoris
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter accusative from imperium, imperi
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indumentis: garments, robes; plural neuter ablative from indumentum, indumenti
 interfectus: interfectus est = he was killed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 intervallum: interval; singular neuter accusative from intervallum, intervalli
 iterum: again
 lapide: milestone; singular masculine ablative from lapis, lapidis
 Lugdūni: in Lyons, France; singular neuter ablative from Lugdunum, Lugduni
 magistri: captain; singular masculine genitive from magister, magistri
 magnis: great; plural ablative from magnus, magna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Martinus: St. Martin of Tours
 Maximianō: Magnus Maximus, emperor of the western Roman empire from 383 to 388, who took the throne by killing Gratian (ablative case)
 Maximus: Magnus Maximus, emperor of the Western Roman Empire
 Mediolanensis: of Milan
 Meroblaudis: Flavius Merobaudes, a Roman army officer of Frankish origin who supported Magnus Maximus against Gratian (ablative case)
 militum: of soldiers; plural masculine genitive from miles, militis
 mox: soon
 multum: many; singular neuter nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 mundō: world; singular masculine ablative from mundus, mundi
 occisus: occisus est = he was killed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from occidō, occidere, occidi, occisus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 Parāssis: in Paris
 patribus: fathers; plural masculine ablative from pater, patris
 per: through
 post: behind, after, since
 presbyter: elder, presbyter; singular masculine nominative from presbyter, presbyteri
 prōditiōne: betrayal, treason; singular feminine ablative from prōditiō, prōditiōnis
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 qui: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 regēbat: he was ruling; 3rd person singular imperfect active from regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus
 rēgiis: royal; plural ablative from regius, regia, regium
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
 repetendus: repetendus est = should be returned to; singular masculine nominative future passive participle from repetō, repetere, repetivi, repetitus
 sēditionem: sedition, treason; singular feminine accusative from sēditiō, sēditiōnis
 sermō: discussion; singular masculine nominative from sermō, sermōnis
 sistitur: he is stopped; 3rd person singular present passive from sistō, sistere, stiti, status
 spoliātus: having been plundered; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvi, spoliātus
 superātus: having been overcome; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 synodus: synod (a religious council); singular masculine nominative from synodus, synodi
 temporis: of times, of periods; singular neuter genitive from tempus, temporis
 tertiō: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 Theodosiō: Theodosius; (Emperor Theodosius 379-395; II 408-450); singular masculine dative from Theodosius, Theodosii
 tōtō: whole, total; singular ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 trānsfretāret: he passed over, ferried; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from trānsfretō, trānsfretāre, trānsfretāvi, trānsfretātus
 tum: then
 Turonensis: of Tours, France
 tyrannō: tyrant; singular masculine ablative from tyrannus, tyranni
 Valentiānō: Valens; (Emperor Flavius Julius Valens 364-378 lost at Adrianople); singular masculine ablative from Valens, Valentis
 Valentiānus: Valens; (Emperor Flavius Julius Valens 364-378 lost at Adrianople); singular masculine nominative from Valens, Valentis
 Valentiniānō: Valentinian; (Emperor Flavius Valentinian I 364-375; II 375-392); singular masculine ablative from Valentinianus, Valentiniani
 Victor: Victor, son of Magnus Maximus
 Victorem: Victor, son of Magnus Maximus
 virtūtibz: virtues, manliness, power; plural feminine ablative from virtūs, virtūtis

30 Tribus vicibus occīsī sunt ducēs Rōmānōrum ā Brittannīs. Brittōnēs autem dum anxiēbantur ā barbarōrum gentibus, id est Scottōrum et Pictōrum, flāgitābant auxilium Rōmānōrum, et dum lēgātī mittēbantur cum magnō lūctū et cum sablōnibus super capita sua intrābant et portābant magna mūnera sēcum cōsulibus Rōmānōrum prō admissō scelere occīsiōnis ducum et suscipiēbant cōsulēs grāta dōna ab illīs, et prōmittēbant cum iūrāmentō accipere iugum Rōmānicī iūris, licet¹ dūrum fuisset.

Et Rōmānī vērunt cum maximō exercitū ad auxilium eōrum et posuērunt imperātōrēs in Brittanniā et compositō imperātōre cum ducibus revertēbantur exercitū ad Rōmam usque, et sīc alternātīm per 348 annōs faciēbant. Brittōnēs autem propter gravitātem imperiī occīdēbant ducēs Rōmānōrum et auxilium postea petēbant. Rōmānī autem ad imperium auxiliumque et ad vindicandum veniēbant et spoliātā Brittanniā aurō argentōque cum aere et omni pretiōsa veste et melle² cum magnō triumphō revertēbantur.

¹*And they promised with an oath to accept the yoke of Roman law, even if it was hard.*

²*Melle* literally means "with honey" but here likely indicates pleasant things in general.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 accipere: to take, to grasp, to receive, to accept; person
 present active from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 admissō: having been admitted; singular masculine ablative
 perfect passive participle from admittō,mittere, admīsi,
 admissus
 aere: copper; singular neuter ablative from aes, aeris
 alternātim: alternately (adverb)
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 anxiebantur: they were anxious
 argentō: silver; singular neuter ablative from argentum, argenti
 aurō: gold; singular neuter ablative from aurum, auri
 autem: but, however, moreover
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium,
 auxilii
 barbarōrum: of the barbarous; plural masculine genitive from
 barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a
 -um
 Brittanniā: in Britain
 Brittanni: Britons (dative or ablative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine
 nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 capita: head; plural neuter accusative from caput, capitis
 compositō: having been ordered; singular masculine ablative
 perfect passive participle from compono, componere,
 composui, compositus
 cōsulēs: consuls; plural masculine nominative or accusative
 from cōsul, cōsulis
 cōsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from cōsul,
 cōsulis
 cum: with
 dōna: gifts; plural neuter accusative from dōnum, dōnī
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 dux, ducis
 ducibus: leaders; plural masculine ablative from dux, ducis
 ducum: of leaders; plural masculine genitive from dux, ducis
 dum: while, as long as, until
 dūrum: hard; singular neuter nominative from dūrus, dūra -um,
 dūrior -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um
 eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter: genitive
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceo, exercere,
 exercui, exercitus
 faciēbant: they were doing, they were making; 3rd person plural
 imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 flāgitābant: they were demanding; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from flāgitō, flāgitāre, flāgitāvī, flāgitātus
 fuisset: he (might) have had been; 3rd person singular
 pluperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 grāta: agreeable, thankful; plural neuter accusative from
 grātus, grāta -um, grātior -or -us, grātissimus -a -um
 gravitātem: gravity, weight, importance; singular feminine
 accusative from gravitās, gravitātis
 id: it
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 imperātōre: commander; singular masculine ablative from
 imperātor, imperātoris
 imperātōrēs: commander; plural masculine accusative from
 imperātor, imperātoris
 imperiī: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter genitive
 from imperium, imperi(i)
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter
 accusative from imperium, imperiī
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intrābant: they were entering; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
 iugum: yoke; singular neuter accusative from iugum, iugī
 iūrāmentō: oath; singular neuter ablative from iūrāmentum,
 iūrāmenti
 iūris: law, right, justice; singular neuter genitive from iūs, iūris
 lēgātī: having been sent; plural masculine nominative perfect
 passive participle from lego, legare, legavi, legatus
 licet: even if
 lūctū: grief, sorrow; singular masculine ablative from lūctus,
 lūctus
 māgna: large; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 maximō: largest; singular masculine ablative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 melle: pleasantness, honey; singular neuter ablative from mel,
 mellis
 mittēbantur: they were sending; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive from mittō, mittere, misi, missus
 mūnera: gifts; plural neuter accusative from mūnus, mūneris
 occidēbant: they were killing; 3rd person plural perfect from
 occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus
 occisi: occisi sunt = they were killed; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from occidō, occidere,
 occidī, occisus
 occisiōnis: massacre, slaughter, murder; singular feminine
 genitive from occisiō, occisiōnis
 omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 per: through
 petēbant: they were asking for; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from petō, petere, petīvī, petitus
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 portābant: they were carrying; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from porto, portare, portavi, portatus
 postea: thereafter, later
 posuērunt: they had put; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
 pretiōsā: precious; singular feminine ablative from pretiōsus,
 pretiōsa -um, pretiōsior -or -us, pretiōsissimus -a -um
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 prōmittēbant: they were promising; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisi, prōmissus
 propter: because of, near
 revertēbantur: they were returning; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive from revento, revertere, reverti, -
 Rōmān: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
 Rōmāni: Romans
 Rōmānicī: Romanic; singular masculine genitive from
 Romanicus, Romanica, Romanicum
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs,
 -a -um
 sablōnibus: with sand/dust; plural neuter ablative variant
 spelling of sabulis, from sabulum, sabuli.
 scelere: crime; singular neuter ablative from scelus, sceleris
 sēcum: with oneself
 sic: thus
 spoliātā: having been plundered; singular feminine ablative
 perfect passive participle from spoliō, spoliāre, spoliāvī,
 spoliātus
 sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from
 suus
 super: above, on top of
 suscipiēbant: they were undertaking; 3rd person plural
 imperfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī,
 susceptus
 Scottōrum: of the Scots
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 triumphō: triumph; singular masculine ablative from triumphus,
 triumphī
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
 veniēbant: they were coming; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
 veste: clothing; singular feminine ablative from vestis, vestis
 vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
 vindicandum: vindicating; singular neuter accusative future
 passive participle from vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī,
 vindicātus

31 Factum est suprā dictum bellum, quod fuit inter Brittōnēs et Rōmānōs, quandō ducēs illōrum occīsī sunt, et occīsiōnem Maximī tyrannī trānsāctōque Rōmānōrum imperiō in Brittanniā per quadrāgintā annōs fuērunt sub metū. Guorthigirnus rēgnāvit in Brittanniā et dum ipse rēgnābat, urgēbātur ā metū Pictōrum Scottōrumque et ā Rōmānicō impetū nec nōn et ā timōre Ambrosiī. Intereā vērunt trēs ciulae ā Germāniā expulsae in exiliō, in quibus erant Hors et Hengīst, quī et ipsī frātrēs erant, filiī Guictglis, filiī Guigtā, filiī Guecthā, filiī Woden, filiī Frealaf, filiī Fredulf, filiī Fīnn, filiī Fodepald, filiī Geta, quī fuit, ut aiunt¹, filius deī. Nōn ipse est deus deōrum, āmēn, deus exercituum, sed ūnus est ab īdōlīs eōrum, quod ipsī colēbant.

Guorthigirnus suscepit eōs benīgnē et trādīdit eīs īnsulam, quae in linguā eōrum vocātur Tanet, Brittannicō sermōne Ruoihm. Rēgnante Grātiānō secundō cum Equitiō², Saxonēs ā Guorthigirnō susceptī sunt annō 347 post passiōnem Chrīstī.

¹*As they say.*

²I added this comma for ease of parsing. Another text, *Nennius Interpretātus*, glosses this sentence as *Grātiānus et Aequitiuus in rēgnō Rōmānōrum in illō tempore, ā nātīvitāte Chrīstī autem 347 annōs.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 āiunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from āiō, āiere,
 Ambrosii: of Ambrosius, probably Ambrosius Aurelianus, a Romano-British commander of the same time period as Guorthigirnus; *Nennius Interpretatus* supports this view. Other options involve Ambrosius (Merlinus) or Ambrose of Milan (unlikely, though mentioned in section 29).
 amen: amen, truly, verily
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum, belli
 benignē: kind, good, friendly; adverb from benignus, benigna -um, benignior -or -us, benignissimus -a -um
 Britannia: in Britain
 Brittannicō: Britannic (ablative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine accusative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Christi: anointed one, Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christi
 ciulae: longship; plural feminine nominative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 colēbant: they were worshiping; 3rd person plural imperfect active from colō, colere, coluī, cultus
 cum: with
 Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 Deōrum: of gods; plural masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei
 suprā dictum: the above-said
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative or accusative from dux, ducis
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eis: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
 eorum: their; plural masc. or neuter: genitive
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 Equitiō: likely Equitius, a magister militum who served in the Roman army in the 360s and 370s.
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 exercituum: of armies. Lord of Hosts (armies) is a common epithet for God in the Bible; plural masculine genitive from exercitus, exercitus
 exiliō: exile; singular neuter ablative from exilium, exiliī
 expulsaē: having been driven out; plural feminine nominative perfect passive participle from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 factum: factum est = it occurred; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fecī, factus
 filiī: of the son; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 Finn: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 Fodepald: Fodepald, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 frātrēs: brothers; plural masculine nominative from frāter, frātris
 Frealaf: Fraelaf, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 Fredulf: Fredulf, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 Germāniā: Germany; singular feminine ablative from Germānia, Germāniae
 Geta: Geta, an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 Grātianō: Gratian, emperor of the western Roman empire; singular masculine ablative from grātia, grātiaē
 Guectha: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 Guictglis: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 Guigta: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist
 Guorthigirnō: by Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (ablative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern), a 5th-century warlord in Britain who invited in Hengist and Horsa
 Hengist: a Saxon warrior who came to Britain during the reign of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern)
 Hors: Horsa, a Saxon warrior who came to Britain during the reign of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern)
 idōlis: idols; plural neuter ablative from idōlum, idōlī
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 imperiō: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter ablative from imperium, imperī
 impetū: attack, assault, fury; singular masculine ablative from impetus, impetūs
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulam: island; singular feminine accusative from insula, insulae
 inter: between, among, during
 intereā: meanwhile
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipsi: themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lingua: tongue, language; singular feminine ablative from lingua, linguae
 Maximi: of Magnus Maximus, emperor of the Western Roman Empire; singular masculine genitive from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 metu: fear; singular masculine ablative from metus, metūs
 nec non: and also, certainly
 nōn: not
 occisi: occisi sunt = they were killed; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 occisiōnem: massacre, slaughter, murder; singular feminine accusative from occisiō, occisiōnis
 passiōnem: suffering, passion; singular feminine accusative from passiō, passiōnis
 per: through
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 post: behind, after, since
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quāndō: when, because
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quibus: what; plural ablative of qui
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
 rēgnante: reigning; singular ablative present participle from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvi, rēgnātus
 Rōmānicō: Romanic; singular masculine ablative from Romanicus, Romanica, Romanicum
 Rōmānōrum: Romans; plural masculine genitive from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 Ruoihm: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 Scottōrum: of the Scots
 secundō: following
 sed: but
 sermōne: speech; singular masculine ablative from sermō, sermōnis
 sub: below, under
 suprā: above
 suscepit: he supported, received; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 suscepti sunt = were received; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 Tanet: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
 timōre: fear; singular masculine ablative from timor, timōris
 trādīdit: he handed over; 3rd person singular perfect active from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus
 trānsactō: having been accomplished; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from transigo, transigere, transegi, transactus
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tyranni: of the tyrant; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyranni
 ūnus: one
 urgēbātur: he was being urged; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from urgeō, urgere, ursi, -
 ut: so that
 vēnerunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venīre, vēni, ventus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātus
 Woden: an ancestor of Horsa and Hengist

32 In tempore illius vēnit sāctus Germānus ad praedicandum in Brittanniā et clāruit apud illōs in multīs virtūtibus et multī per eum salvī factī sunt et plūrimī periērunt¹.

Aliquanta mīrācula, quae per illum fēcit deus, scrībenda² dēcrēvī.

Primum mīrāculum dē mīrāculīs eīs: erat quīdam rēx inīquus atque tyrannus valdē, cui nōmen erat Benlī. Illum vir sāctus voluit vīsītāre et properāre ad inīquum rēgem, ut praedicāret illī. At cum ipse homō Deī vēnisset ad ōstium urbis cum comitibus suis, vēnit portārius et salūtāvit eōs et mīsērunt³ eum ad rēgem et rēx dūrum respōnsum dedit illīs et cum iūrāmentō dīxit: sī fuerint⁴ vel sī mānserint usque ad caput annī, nōn venient umquam in mediō urbis meae.

¹*Many were saved through him and many more perished.* Saint Germanus preached against Pelagianism, a heresy that denied original sin and argued that man could merit eternal life without the grace of God. Thus, it is likely that when the author wrote *plūrimī perriērunt*, he is referring to those who remained in heresy and thus incurred a spiritual death.

²*I decided are to be written.*

³Saint Germanus and his companions sent the doorkeeper to the king while they remained outside, waiting for permission to enter.

⁴*(Even) if you were or remained (waiting at the door) until the start of the year, you will not ever come into the middle of my city.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliquanta: some
anni: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, anni
apud: at, by, near
at: and
atque: and
Benī: a tyrant that Saint Germanus wanted to preach to
Britanniā: Britain (ablative case)
caput: beginning, head; singular neuter nominative from caput, capitis
clāruit: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active from claresco, clarescere, clarui, -
comitibus: comrades; plural common ablative from comes, comitis
cui: who; singular dative from quis
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dēcrēvi: I decided; 1st person singular perfect active from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
dūrum: hard; singular neuter nominative from dūrus, dūra -um, dūrior -or -us, dūriissimus -a -um
eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
factī: factī sunt: they were made; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
fuerint: they will have been; 3rd person plural future perfect from esse
Germānus: Saint Germanus
homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
illī: to him; singular masculine dative from ille, illa, illud
illīs: to them; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inīquum: unjust; singular masculine accusative from inīquus, inīqua -um, inīquior -or -us, inīquissimus -a -um
inīquus: unjust; singular masculine nominative from inīquus, inīqua -um, inīquior -or -us, inīquissimus -a -um
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
iūrāmentō: oath; singular neuter ablative from iūrāmentum, iūrāmentī
mānsērunt: they will have remained; 3rd person plural perfect active subjunctive from manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus
meae: my; singular feminine genitive from meus, mea, meum
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium
mīrācula: miracles; plural neuter accusative from mīrāculum, mīrāculī
mīrāculīs: miracles; plural neuter ablative from mīrāculum, mīrāculī
mīrāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from mīrāculum, mīrāculī
mīsērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittō, mittere, misi, missus
multī: many; plural nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
multis: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
ōstium: door; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstī
per: through
perivērunt: they perished; 3rd person plural perfect active from pereō, perire, perivī(ī), peritus
plūrimī: very many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
portārius: doorkeeper; singular masculine nominative from portārius, portārī
praedicandum: preaching; gerund from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvi, praedicātus
praedicāret: he was preaching; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvi, praedicātus
prīmum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīmum

prīmum
properāre: to hurry; present infinitive from properō, properāre, properāvi, properātus
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quidam: a certain; singular masculine nominative of quīdam
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
respōnsum: response; singular neuter accusative from respōnsum, respōnsī
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
salūtāvit: he saluted, he greeted; 3rd person singular perfect active from salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvi, salūtātus
salvī: saved (in the sense of salvation, in this context), safe; singular masculine genitive from salvus, salva, salvum
sāctus: holy, saint
scribenda: are to be written, should be written; plural neuter accusative gerundive from scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus
sī: if
suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
tyrannus: tyrant; singular masculine nominative from tyrannus, tyrannī
umquam: ever
urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
ūsq̄: until, all the way, up until
ut: so that
valdē: very
vel: or
venient: they will come; 3rd person plural future active from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
venisset: he (might) have had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
venit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
virtūtibus: virtues, manliness, power; plural feminine ablative from virtūs, virtūtis
vīsītāre: to visit; present infinitive from vīsītō, vīsītāre, vīsītāvī, vīsītātus
voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -

Dum ipsī expectārent ianuātōrem, ut nūntiāret¹ illis sermōnem tyrannī, diēs dēclīnābat ad vesperum et nox appropinquābat et nesciērunt, quō īrent². Inter ea vēnit ūnus dē servīs rēgis ē mediō urbis et inclīnāvit sē ante virum Deī et nūntiāvit illis omnia verba tyrannī et invitāvit illōs ad casam suam et exiērunt cum eō et benīgnē suscēpit eōs. Et ille nihil habēbat dē omnibus generibus iūmentōrum exceptā ūnā vaccā cum vitulō, et occīdit vitulum et coxit et posuit ante illōs. Et praecēpit sānctus Germānus, ut nōn cōnfringerētur³ os dē ossibus eius et sīc factum est et in crāstinō vitulus inventus est ante mātrem suam sānus et vīvus incolumisque.

¹*That he might announce to them the decree of the tyrant.*

²*They did not know to where they might go (to spend the night).*

³*That they not break a bone of his bones.* This is reminiscent of John 19:36 ἐγένετο γὰρ ταῦτα ἵνα ἡ γραφή πληρωθῇ Ὅστοῦν οὐ συντριβήσεται αὐτοῦ. "This happened that the scripture be fulfilled: not one of his bones will be broken", which in turn references LXX Psalm 33:21 φυλάσσει Κύριος πάντα τὰ ὀστέα αὐτῶν, ἐν ἐξ αὐτῶν οὐ συντριβήσεται. "The Lord guards all his bones, not one of them will be broken".

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 appropinquābat: he approached; 3rd person singular imperfect active from appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātus
 benignē: kind, good, friendly; singular masculine vocative from benignus, benigna -um, benignior -or -us, benignissimus -a -um
 casam: house; singular feminine accusative from casa, casae
 cōnfringerētur: it might not be broken; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from cōnfringō, cōnfringere, cōnfrēgī, cōnfractus
 coxit: he cooked; 3rd person singular perfect active from coquō, coquere, coxi, coctus
 crāstinō: on the next day; singular masculine ablative from crāstinus, crāstina, crāstinum
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 declinābat: it went down; 3rd person singular imperfect active from declinō, declināre, declināvī, declinātus
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 diēs: day; singular common nominative from diēs, diēi
 dum: while, as long as, until
 ē: out of, from
 ea: them; plural neuter accusative from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 eō: him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 et: and
 exceptā: except
 exiērunt: they came out, they went out; 3rd person plural perfect active from exeō, exire, exiī, exitus
 expectārent: they awaited; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātus
 factum: factum est = it was done;
 generibus: types; plural neuter ablative from genus, generis
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from habeo, habere, habui, habitus
 iānuatōrem: door-keeper; singular masculine accusative from iānuatōr, iānuatōris. This word was not in any dictionary I consulted; yet the meaning is clear from the root word iānuā
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: to them; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: them; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inclināvit: he inclined; 3rd person singular perfect active from inclinō, inclināre, inclināvī, inclinātus
 incolumis: unharmed; singular common nominative from incolumis, incolumis, incolume
 inter: between, among, during
 inventus: inventus est = was found; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from invenio, invenire, invēnī, inventus
 invitāvit: he invited; 3rd person singular perfect active from invito, invitāre, invitāvī, invitātus
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 irent: they (might) have gone; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from eo, ire, iī, itus
 iūmentōrum: of food. Technically it means 'of draft animals' but the context makes it clear; plural neuter genitive from iūmentum, iūmenti
 mātrem: mother; singular feminine accusative from māter, mātris
 mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium
 nesciverunt: they didn't know; 3rd person plural perfect active from nescio, nescire, nescivī, nescitus
 nihil: not at all
 nōn: not
 nox: night; singular feminine nominative from nox, noctis
 nūntiāret: he announced; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus
 nūntiāvit: he announced; 3rd person singular perfect active from nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus
 occīdit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō, occidere, occidi, occisus
 omnia: all, every; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 os: bone; singular neuter nominative from os, ossis
 ossibus: bones; plural neuter ablative from os, ossis
 posuit: he put; 3rd person singular perfect active from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
 praecēpit: he ordered; 3rd person singular perfect active from praecipio, praecipere, praecēpi, praeeptus
 quō: to where; singular ablative of quis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 sāctus: holy, saint
 sānus: healthy, sound; singular masculine nominative from sānus, sāna, sānum
 se: himself
 sermōnem: decree, speech; singular masculine accusative from sermō, sermōnis
 servīs: slaves, servants; plural masculine ablative from servus, servi
 sīc: thus
 suam: his, her, its; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suscepit: he received, supported; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipio, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 tyrannī: of the tyrant; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyranni
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnus: one
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
 ut: so that
 vaccā: cow; singular feminine ablative from vacca, vaccae
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 verba: word; plural neuter accusative from verbum, verbī
 vesp̄rum: evening; singular masculine accusative from vesper, vesperis
 virum: man; singular masculine accusative from vir, virī
 vitulō: calf; singular masculine ablative from vitulus, vitulī
 vitulum: calf; singular feminine accusative from vitula, vitulae
 vitulus: calf; singular masculine nominative from vitulus, vitulī
 vivus: alive; singular masculine nominative from vivus, viva, vīvum

33 Iterum dē māne surrēxērunt, ut impetrārent¹ salūtātiōnem tyrannī. At ipsī, cum ōrārent et exspectārent iuxtā portam arcis, et ecce vir ūnus currēbat et sūdor illius ā vertice ad plantās pedum distillābat. Inclīnābat sē ante illōs et dīxit sāctus Germānus: crēdis in Sāctam Trīnitātem? Et respondit ille: 'crēdō', et baptizātus est et ōsculāvit eum et dīxit illī: 'vāde in pāce: in istā hōrā moriēris et angelī Deī in aere expectant tē, ut gradiēris cum illīs ad Deum, cui crēdidistī'. Et ipse laetus intrāvit in arcem et praefectus tenuit illum et alligāvit et ante tyrannum ductūs et interfectus est, quia mōs erat apud nēquissimum² tyrannum, nisi quis ante sōlis ortum pervēnisset ad servitūtem in arce, interficiēbātur. Et mānsērunt tōtā diē iuxtā portam cīvitātis et nōn impetrāvērunt, ut salūtārent tyrannum.

¹*That they might obtain an audience with the tyrant.*

²*Because the custom was with the most worst tyrant, that unless someone would come to serve in the citadel before the rising of the sun, he was killed.* The reader may benefit from pondering the symbolism of the times (sun setting, sun rising) and locations (outside the city, inside the citadel) given in this story.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aere: in the air; singular masculine ablative from āēr, āeris
 alligāvit: he tied; 3rd person singular perfect active from alligō, alligāre, alligāvī, alligātus
 angeli: angel; plural masculine nominative from angelus, angelī
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 apud: at, by, near
 arce: citadel; singular feminine ablative from arx, arcis
 arx, arcis: citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 at: and
 baptizātus: baptizātus est = he was baptized;
 civitātis: city; singular feminine genitive from civitās, civitātis
 crēdidistī: you believed; 2nd person singular perfect active from credo, credere, credidī, creditus
 crēdis: you believe; 2nd person singular present active from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
 crēdō: I believe; 1st person singular present active from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
 cui: whom; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 currēbat: he ran; 3rd person singular imperfect active from currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 Deum: god; singular masculine accusative from Deus, Dei
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 distillābat: it was dripping; 3rd person singular imperfect active from distillō, distillāre, distillāvī, distillātus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 ductus: ductus est = was lead; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from ducō, ducere, duxī, ductus
 ecce: Look! Behold!
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 expectant: they await; 3rd person plural present active from expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātus
 exspectārent: they awaited; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 gradieris: you will walk; 2nd person singular future from gradior, gradi, gressus
 hōrā: hour, time; singular feminine ablative from hōra, hōrae
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: to him; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 impetrārent: they obtained; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus
 impetrāverunt: they obtained; 3rd person plural perfect active from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inclinābat: he inclined; 3rd person singular imperfect active from inclinō, inclināre, inclināvī, inclinātus
 interfectus: interfectus est = he was killed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus
 interficiēbatur: he was killed; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus
 intrāvit: he entered; 3rd person singular perfect active from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 istā: this; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 iterum: again
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 laetus: happy; singular masculine nominative from laetus, laeta -um, laetior -or -us, laetissimus -a -um
 manē: morning
 mānsērunt: they have remained; 3rd person plural perfect active from maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus
 moriēris: you will die; 2nd person singular future from morior, mori, mortuus
 mōs: manner, custom; singular masculine nominative from mōs, mōris
 nēquissimum: the very worst, singular masculine accusative from nēquissimus -a -um (superlative of nēquam, worst)
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōn: not
 orārent: they prayed; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from orō, orāre, orāvī, orātus
 ortum: rising, beginning; singular masculine accusative from

neuter
 osculāvit: he kissed; 3rd person singular perfect from osculō, osculāre, osculāvī, osculātum
 pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
 pedum: of feet; plural masculine genitive from pēs, pedis
 pervēnisset: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 plantās: soles; plural feminine accusative from planta, plantae
 portam: gate; singular feminine accusative from porta, portae
 praefectus: prefect, officer; singular masculine nominative from praefectus, praefectī
 quia: because
 quis: who
 respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active from respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōsus
 salūtārent: they greeted; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātus
 salūtātionem: greeting; singular feminine accusative from salūtātiō, salūtātiōnis
 sāctam: holy
 sāctus: holy, saint
 se: himself
 servitūtem: servitude; singular feminine accusative from servitūs, servitūtis
 sōlis: sun; singular masculine genitive from sōl, sōlis
 sūdor: sweat; singular masculine nominative from sūdor, sūdōris
 surrēxerunt: they raised up; 3rd person plural perfect active from surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 tōtā: whole, total; singular feminine ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 Trīnitātem: Trinity; singular feminine accusative from Trīnitās, Trīnitātis
 tyranni: of the tyrant; singular masculine genitive from tyrannus, tyranni
 tyrannum: tyrant; singular masculine accusative from tyrannus, tyranni
 ūnus: one
 ut: so that
 vāde: go!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from vādō, vādere, vāsī, -
 vertice: head, top, peak; singular masculine ablative from vertex, verticis
 vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī

34 Solitō¹ ex mōre suprādictus adfuit servus et dīxit illī sāctus Germānus: 'cavē, nē ūnus homō maneat dē hominibus tuīs in istā nocte in arce'. Et ipse reversus est in arcem et dēdūxit filiōs suōs, quōrum numerus erat novem, et ipsī ad suprā dictum hospitium cum ipsō reversī sunt. Et praecēpit sāctus Germānus manēre² eōs ieiūnōs et clausīs iānuīs dīxit: vigilantēs ēstote et sī quid³ ēvēnerit in arce, nōlīte aspicere, sed ōrāte indēsinenter et ad Deum vestrum clāmāte. Et post modicum intervāllum noctis ignis dē caelō cecidit et combussit arcem et omnēs hominēs, quī cum tyrannō erant, et nusquam appāruērunt usque in hodiernum diem, et arx nōn aedificāta est usque⁴ hodiē.

¹*Per the usual custom, the aforementioned slave (the doorkeeper of the citadel) was present.*

²*And Saint Germanus ordered them to remain fasting and, having closed the doors, said.*

³*Be vigilant and, whatever happens in the citadel, do not look, but pray unceasingly and cry out to your God. The injunction not to look upon the destruction of the evil place is reminiscent of the destruction of Sodom.*

⁴*The citadel wasn't rebuilt, all the way up until today.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adfuit: he was present; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus
 aedificāta: aedificāta est = it was (re)built; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from aedificō,
 aedificāre, aedificāvi, aedificātus
 apparuerunt: they appeared; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from appāreo, appārere, apparui, appāritus
 arce: citadel; singular feminine ablative from arx, arcis
 arcem: citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx, arcis
 arx: citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 aspicere: to look at, to contemplate; person present active
 from aspiciō, aspicere, aspēxi, aspectus
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus,
 caeli
 cavē: Beware!; singular masculine imperative from caveō,
 cavēre, cāvī, cautus
 cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidī, cāsus
 clāmāte: shout!; plural imperative from clāmāre
 clausis: having been closed; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus
 combussit: it burned up; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 combūrō, combūrere, combussi, combustus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēdūxit: he lead out; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus
 Deum: god; singular masculine accusative from Deus, Dei
 dictum: suprā dictum = above said;
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dīcō,
 dicere, dixī, dictus
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 estōte: be! (in the future); 2nd person plural future active
 imperative from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 evēnerit: it happened; 3rd person singular perfect active
 subjunctive from eveniō, evenīre, evēnī, eventus
 ex: out of, from
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 Germānus: Saint Germanus
 hodiē: today
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter accusative from hodiernus,
 hodierna, hodiernum
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine accusative from homō,
 hominis
 hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō,
 hominis
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 hospitium: place for receiving strangers; singular neuter
 accusative from hospitium, hospitia
 iānuīs: doors; plural feminine ablative from iānuā, iānuae
 iēiūnōs: fasting; plural masculine accusative from jējūnus,
 jējūna -um, jējūnior -or -us, jējūnissimus -a -um
 ignis: fire; singular masculine nominative from ignis, ignis
 illi: to him; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indēsiner: incessantly, ceaselessly
 intervallum: interval; singular neuter accusative from
 intervallum, intervalli
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipsō: itself; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum
 istā: this; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 maneat: he remains; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from maneo, manēre, mānsī, mānsus
 manēre: to remain; present infinitive from maneo, manēre,
 mānsī, mānsus
 modicum: a little; singular neuter accusative or accusative from
 modicum, modica
 mōre: manner, custom; singular masculine ablative from mōs,
 mōris
 nē: not
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 noctis: nights; singular feminine genitive from nox, noctis
 nōlite: be unwilling! Don't! imperative plural of nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi
 (irr.)
 nōn: not
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from
 numerus, numeri

nusquam: nowhere
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 orāte: pray! plural imperative from orō, orāre, orāvī, orātus
 post: behind, after, since
 praecēpit: he ordered; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 praecipio, praecipere, praecēpi, praecēptus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 reversi: reversi sunt = they returned;
 reversus: reversus + est = he returned
 sāctus: holy, saint
 sed: but
 servus: slave, servant; singular masculine nominative from
 servus, servi
 si: if
 solitō: usual; singular masculine ablative from solitus -a -um
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
 suprā: over, above, beyond, before
 suprādictus: the aforesaid
 tuis: yours; plural ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
 tyrannō: tyrant; singular masculine ablative from tyrannus,
 tyranni
 ūnus: one
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vestrum: your; singular masculine accusative or singular neuter
 nominative or accusative from vester
 vigilantēs: keeping watch, waking up; plural common
 nominative present participle from vigilō, vigilāre, vigilāvī,
 vigilātum

35 In crāstinō diē ille vir, quī hospitālis fuit illīs, crēdidit et baptizātus est cum omnibus filiīs suīs et omnīs rēgiō cum eīs, cui nōmen erat Catel. Et benedixit eī et addidit et dīxit: nōn dēficiet¹ rēx dē sēmine tuō. Ipse est Catell² Durnlūc, et tū rēx eris ab hodiernā diē. Et sīc ēvenit; et implētum est, quod dictum est per prophētā³ dīcentem: 'suscitāns dē pulvere egēnum, et dē stercore ērigēns pauperem, ut sedeat cum prīncipibus et solium glōriae teneat.' Iūxtā verba sānctī Germānī rēx dē servō factī sunt, et ā sēmine illōrum omnis regiō Povīsōrum regitur usque in hodiernum diem.

¹*A king will not lack from your offspring.*

²*He himself is Catell Durnllūc, and you will be king from this day.* It appears the servant's name is Catel, he is made king, and is told that his son Catell Durnlūc will be king after him.

³This is a quote from 1 Samuel 2:8, in a prayer Hannah makes after giving birth to Samuel.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 addidit: he added; 3rd person singular perfect active from addō, addere, addidī, additus
 baptizātus: baptizātus est = he was baptized
 benedixit: he blessed; 3rd person singular perfect active from benedicō, benedicere, benedixī, benedictus
 Catel: the name of the servant who became king
 Catell: Catell Durnluc: the son of the servant who became king
 crāstinō: tomorrow; singular masculine ablative from crāstinus, crāstina, crāstinum
 crēdidit: he believed; 3rd person singular perfect active from credo, credere, credidi, creditus
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēficiet: he will lack; 3rd person singular future from dēficiō, dēficere, dēfeci, dēfectus
 dīcentem: saying; singular common accusative present participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dictum: dictum est = was said
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 Durnluc: Catell Durnluc: the son of the servant who became king
 egēnum: poor man; singular neuter accusative from egēnus, egēna, egēnum
 eī: him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 eis: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 ērigēns: raising, building; singular nominative present participle from ērigō, ērigere, ērēxī, ērēctus
 eris: you will be; 2nd person singular future active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvēnit: it happened; 3rd person singular present active from eveniō, evenire, ēvēnī, ēventus
 factī: factī sunt = was made
 filiīs: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, fili
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 Germānī: Germans
 glōriae: of glory, fame, honor; singular feminine genitive from glōria, glōriae
 hodiernā: today; singular feminine ablative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter accusative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hospitālis: hospitable; singular common nominative from hospitālis, hospitālis, hospitāle
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 implētum: implētum est = was fulfilled
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iūxtā: according
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnis: all, every; singular plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 pauperem: poor; singular common accusative from pauper, pauperis (gen.), pauperior -or -us, pauperrimus -a -um
 per: through
 prīncipibus: princes; plural masculine ablative from prīnceps, prīncipis
 prophētā: prophet; singular masculine accusative from prophēta, prophētae
 Powīsōrum: of Powys, a region in Wales
 pulvere: dust, arena; singular masculine ablative from pulvis, pulveris
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 regiō: region; singular masculine ablative from regius, regia, regium
 regitur: is ruled; 3rd person singular present passive from regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sanctī: holy
 sedeat: he sits; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from sedeō, sedēre, sedī, sessus
 sēmine: offspring, descendants; singular neuter ablative from sēmen, sēminis
 servō: servant; singular masculine ablative from servus, servi
 sic: thus
 solium: throne; plural masculine genitive from solium, solii
 stercore: dung; singular masculine ablative from stercus, stercoreis
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suscitāns: awakening, stirring up; singular nominative present participle from suscitō, suscitāre, suscitāvī, suscitātus
 teneat: he holds; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 tu: you; (pronoun)
 tuō: your; singular masculine dative from tuus, tua, tuum
 usque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 verba: word; plural neuter accusative from verbum, verbi
 vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, viri

36 Factum est autem postquam mētātī¹ sunt Saxonēs in suprā dictā īnsulā Tanet, prōmīsīt rēx suprā dictus darī illīs vīctum et vestīmentum absque dēfectiōne; et placuit illīs, et ipsī prōmīsērunt expugnāre inimīcōs eius fortiter. At illī barbarī cum multiplicātī essent numerō, nōn potuērunt Brittōnēs cibāre illōs. Cum postulārent cibum et vestīmentum, sīcut prōmissum erat illīs, dīxērunt Brittōnēs: nōn possumus dare vōbīs cibum et vestīmentum, quia numerus vester multiplicātus est, sed recēdite ā nōbīs, quia auxiliō vestrō nōn indigēmus². Et ipsī cōnsilium fēcērunt cum maiōribus suīs, ut pācem disrumperent.

¹*It happened, however, after (the new lands for) the Saxons were measured off in the above-said island Thanet, the above-said king (Guorthigirn/Vortigern) promised to give to them food and clothing so long as they didn't rebel.*

²*Because we do not need your help.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 absque: but for, without
 at: and
 autem: but, however, moreover
 auxiliō: help, aid; singular neuter dative from auxilium, auxiliī
 barbari: barbarians; singular masculine genitive from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 cibāre: to feed; 2nd person singular imperfect passive from cibō, cibāre, cibāvī, cibātus
 cibum: food; singular masculine accusative from cibus, cibī
 cōsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from consilium, consili(i)
 cum: with
 dare: to give; present infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 darī: to be given; passive infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 defectionē: defection, revolt; singular feminine ablative from defectiō, defectionis
 dictā: having been said; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 disrumpent: they shattered; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from disrumpō, disrumpere, disrūpī, disruptus
 dixerunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 expugnāre: to assault, to storm, to conquer; person present active from expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus
 factum: factum est = it happened
 fecerunt: they did, they made; 3rd person plural perfect active from faciō, facere, fecī, factus
 fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)
 illi: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indigēmus: we lack; 1st person plural present active from indigeo, indigere, indigui, -
 inimicōs: enemies; plural masculine accusative from inimicus, inimica -um, inimicior -or -us, inimicissimus -a -um
 insulā: island; singular feminine ablative from insula, insulae
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 maiōribus: elders; plural ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mētātī: mētātī sunt = they were measured off
 multiplicātī: having been multiplied; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō, multiplicāre, multiplicāvī, multiplicātus
 multiplicātus: having been multiplied; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from multiplicō, multiplicāre, multiplicāvī, multiplicātus
 nōbīs: us; singular dative or ablative from ego
 nōn: not
 numerō: number; singular masculine ablative from numerus, numeri
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from numerus, numeri
 pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis
 placuit: it pleased; 3rd person singular perfect active from placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus
 possumus: we are able to; 1st person plural present active from possum, posse, potuī, -
 postquam: since, since then, after
 postulārent: they demanded; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
 potuerunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prōmisērunt: they promised; 3rd person plural perfect active from prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisī, prōmissus
 prōmisit: he promised; 3rd person singular perfect active from prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisī, prōmissus
 prōmissum: prōmissum erat = had been promised;
 quia: because
 recēdite: withdraw!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 sed: but
 sicut: as, same as, like
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suprā: over, above, beyond, before
 Tanet: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
 ut: so that

37 Hencgistus autem, cum esset vir doctus atque astutus et callidus, cum explōrāsset¹ super rēgem inertem et super gentem illius, quae sine armīs ūtēbātur, initō cōsiliō dīxit ad rēgem Brittannicum: paucī sumus; sī vīs, mittēmus ad patriam nostram et invītēmus mīlitēs dē mīlitibus regiōnis nostrae, ut amplior sit numerus ad certandum prō tē et prō gente tuā. Et ille imperāvit ut facerent, et mīsērunt, et legātī trānsfretāvērunt trāns Tithicam² vallem, et reversī sunt cum ciulīs sēdecim, et mīlitēs ēlēctī vērunt in illīs, et in ūnā ciulā ex eīs vēnit puella pulchra faciē atque decorōsa valdē, filia Hencgistī.

¹Having had examined the weak king and his people, that they were without weapons.

²And the delegation crossed over the English channel. *Tithis* can mean a sea nymph or the sea, so the "sea valley" described here is the English channel, since they are crossing from England to Germany in order to bring over more Saxons.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
amplior: ampler, larger; singular common nominative from
amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
astūtus: astute, sly; singular masculine nominative from astūtus,
astūta -um, astūtior -or -us, astūtissimus -a -um
atque: and
autem: but, however, moreover
callidus: clever, crafty; singular masculine nominative from
callidus, callida -um, callidior -or -us, callidissimus -a -um
certandum: fighting; singular neuter accusative gerund from
certō, certāre, certāvī, certātus
ciulā: longship; singular feminine nominative variant spelling
from ceola, ceolae
ciulis: longship; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from
ceola, ceolae
cōnsiliō: plan, advice, council; singular neuter ablative from
consilium, consilii
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
decorōsa: elegant; alternative spelling from decōrus -a -um
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
dicere, dixī, dictus
doctus: learned, knowledgeable; singular masculine nominative
from doctus -a -um
eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
ēlēcti: chosen; plural masculine nominative perfect passive
participle from ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus
esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect
active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
et: and
ex: out of, from
explōrasset: he had examined; 3rd person singular pluperfect
active subjunctive from explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī,
explōrātus
facient: they did; 3rd person plural imperfect active
subjunctive from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
faciē: shape, figure, appearance, look; singular feminine
ablative from facies, faciēs
filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae
gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
gēns, gentis
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
gēns, gentis
ille: that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
illis: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
imperāvit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect active
from imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inertem: weak, unskillful; singular common accusative from
iners, inertis (gen.), inertior -or -us, inertissimus -a -um
initō: having been started; ablative past passive participle from
inire
invitēmus: we invite; 1st person plural present active
subjunctive from invitō, invitāre, invitāvī, invitātus
lēgātī: legates; plural masculine nominative from lēgātus, lēgātī
militēs: soldiers; plural masculine nominative from miles, militis
militibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from miles, militis
misērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittō,
mittere, misi, missus
mittēmus: we will send; 1st person plural future active from
mittō, mittere, misi, missus
nostrae: our; singular feminine genitive of noster
nostram: our; plural genitive of ego
numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from
numerus, numeri
patriam: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
patriae
pauci: few, little; plural masculine nominative from paucus,
pauci
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
puella: girl; singular feminine nominative from puella, puellae
pulchra: beautiful; singular feminine nominative from pulcher,
pulchra -um, pulchrior -or -us, pulcherrimus -a -um
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō,
regiōnis
reversi: reversi sunt = they returned
sēdecim: 16
sī: if
sine: without
sit: it (might) be; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive
from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
sumus: we are; 1st person plural present active from sum, esse,
fui, futūrus
super: above, on top of
tē: to you, accusative from tu
trāns: across, beyond
trānsfretāvērunt: they passed over, ferried; 3rd person plural
perfect active from trānsfretō, trānsfretāre, trānsfretāvī,
trānsfretātus
tuā: you; singular feminine ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
unā: one; singular feminine ablative from unus -a -um, primus -a
-um, singulī -ae -a, semel
Brittannicum: Brittainic
Hengisti: Hengist, the Saxon captain
Hengistus: Hengist, the Saxon captain
Tithicam: the sea
ut: so that
ūtēbātur: they were using/had
valdē: very
vallem: valley; singular feminine accusative from valles, vallis
vērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
vērunt: she came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō,
venīre, vēnī, ventus
vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
vis: you want; 2nd person singular present active from volō,
velle

Postquam autem vēnissent ciulae, fēcit Hencgistus convīvium Guorthigirnō et militibus suis et interpreti suō, quī vocātur Ceretic et puellam iussit ministrāre illīs vīnum et siceram et inēbriātī¹ sunt et saturātī sunt nimis. Illīs² autem bibentibus intrāvit Satanās in corde Guorthigirnī, ut amāret puellam, et postulāvit eam ā patre suō per interpretem suum et dīxit: omne quod postulās ā mē impetrābis, licet³ dīmidium rēgnī meī. Et Hencgistus, initō cōnsiliō cum suis seniōribus, quī vēnērunt sēcum dē īnsulā Oghgul, quid peterent rēgī prō puellā, ūnum cōnsilium cum illīs omnibus fuit, ut peterent regiōnem, quae in linguā eōrum vocātur Canturguoralen, in nostrā autem Chent. Et dedit illīs Guoyrancgōnō rēgnante in Cantiā et īnscius⁴ erat, quia rēgnum ipsīus trādēbātur pāgānīs et ipse sōlus in potestātem illōrum clam darī, et sīc data est puella illī in coniugium et dormīvit cum eā et amāvit eam valdē.

¹*And he ordered the girl to minister to them wine and beer and they were very drunk and very full.*

²*Therefore, with them drinking, Satan entered into the heart of Vortigern.*

³*Up to half my kingdom.* This is highly reminiscent of Mark 6:23, the party in which Herod got drunk, made a similar oath to the daughter of Herodius, and murdered John the Baptist.

⁴*And it was unknown that he betrayed his kingdom to the pagans and he himself alone was secretly to be given into their power.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 amāret: he loved; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus
 amāvit: he loved; 3rd person singular perfect active from amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus
 autem: but, however, moreover
 bibentibus: drinking; plural ablative present participle from bibō, bibere, bibi, pōtum
 Cantiā: in Kent
 Canturguoralen: modern-day Kent
 Ceretic: the name of the interpreter
 Chent: modern-day Kent
 ciulae: longship; plural nominative variant spelling from ceola, ceolae
 clam: secretly, stealthily, without the knowledge of
 coniugium: marriage; plural neuter accusative from coniugium, coniugii
 cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter nominative from consilium, consilii
 convivium: banquet, feast; singular neuter accusative from convivium, convivii
 corde: heart; singular neuter ablative from cor, cordis
 cum: with
 dari: to be given; present passive infinitive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 data: data est = was given; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dīmidium: half; singular neuter nominative from dīmidium, dīmidii
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 dormivit: he slept; 3rd person singular perfect active from dormiō, dormire, dormivi, dormitus
 ea: it; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or acc. from is, ea, id
 eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 eorum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 fecit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, feci, factus
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 Guorthigirni: of Guorthigirinus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirno: Guorthigirinus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
 Guoyrancgōnō: to Guoyrancgonus, a king who ruled in Kent
 Hengistus: Hengist, a Saxon leader
 illi: to him; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illorum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 impetrābis: you will obtain; 2nd person singular future active from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inēbriātī: having been made drunk; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from inēbriō, inēbriāre, inēbriāvī, inēbriātus
 initō: having entered into; singular ablative past passive participle from ineō, inire, iniī, initus
 īnscius: ignorant, unknown; singular masculine nominative from īnscius, īnscia, īnscium
 īnsulā: island; singular feminine ablative from īnsula, īnsulae
 interpretem: translator, broker; singular common accusative from interpretes, interpretis
 interpreti: translator, broker; singular common dative or ablative from interpretes, interpretis
 intrāvit: he entered; 3rd person singular perfect active from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipsius: of itself; singular genitive from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus
 licet: allow
 linguā: tongue, language; singular feminine ablative from lingua, linguae
 mē: to me, accusative from ego
 mēi: my; (pronoun)
 militibus: soldiers; plural masculine dative or ablative from miles, militis
 ministrāre: to serve, to attend to; present infinitive from ministrō, ministrāre, ministrāvī, ministrātus
 nimis: too much, extremely
 nostrā: our; singular feminine ablative from noster, nostra, nostrum
 Oghgul: the name of an island from which Hengist's elders came
 omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural dative or ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 pāgānis: pagans; plural masculine dative from pāgānus, pāgāni
 patre: father; singular masculine ablative from pater, patris
 per: through
 peterent: they asked for; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from petō, petere, petivī, petitus
 postquam: since, since then, after
 postulās: you ask for, demand; 2nd person singular present active from postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
 postulāvit: he asked for, demanded; 3rd person singular perfect active from postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
 potestātem: power; singular feminine accusative from potestās, potestātis
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 puella: girl; singular feminine nominative from puella, puellae
 puellam: girl; singular feminine accusative from puella, puellae
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnante: reigning; singular ablative present participle from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgni: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnum, rēgni
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgni
 Satanās: Satan, adversary; singular masculine nominative from Satanas, Satanae
 saturātī: having been sated, saturated; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from saturō, saturāre, saturāvī, saturātus
 sēcum: with oneself
 seniōribus: elders; plural ablative from senex, senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
 sīc: thus
 siceram: a type of alcoholic beverage, beer; singular feminine accusative from sicera, siceræ
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla, sōlum (gen -ius)
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 trādēbātur: he was handed over; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus
 ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 valdē: very
 vēnērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus
 vēnissent: they (might) have had come
 vīnum: wine; singular neuter nominative from vīnum, vīni
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

38 Et dīxit Hencgistus ad Guorthigirnum: ego sum pater tuus et cōnsiliātor tuī, et nōlī praeterīre¹ cōnsilium umquam, quia nōn timēbis tē superārī ab ūllō homine neque ab ūllā gente, quia gēns mea valida est. Invītābō filium meum cum fratuelī suō, bellātōrēs enim virī sunt, ut dīmicient contrā Scottōs, et dā illīs regiōnēs, quae sunt in aquilōne iutxtā mūrum, quī vocātur Guaul. Et iussit ut invītāret eōs et invītāvit: Octha et Ebissa cum quadrāgintā ciulīs. At ipsī cum nāvigārent circā Pictōs, vastāvērunt Orcadēs īnsulās et vērērunt et occupāvērunt regiōnēs plūrimās ultrā mare Frenessicum usque ad confīnum Pictōrum. Et Hencgistus semper ciulās ad sē paulātīm invītāvit, ita² ut īnsulās ad quās vērerant absque habitātōre relinquerent, et dum gēns illīus crēvisset et in virtūte et in multitūdine, vērērunt ad suprā dictam cīvitātem Cantōrum.

¹*Don't pass over (my) counsel ever.*

²*So that the islands to which they had come they might leave without inhabitant.* Hengist was moving all his people from islands they had occupied onto the British mainland.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 abs: from, out of, by, since
 absque: without
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō,
 aquilōnis
 at: and
 bellātōrēs: fighters; plural masculine nominative from bellātor,
 bellātōris
 Cantōrum: of Kent
 circā: around, about, concerning
 ciulās: longships; plural feminine accusative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 ciulis: longship; plural feminine dative or ablative variant
 spelling from ceola, ceolae
 civitātem: civilization; singular feminine accusative from civitās,
 civitātis
 cōnfinium: border; singular neuter accusative from confinium,
 confiniū
 cōnsiliātor: counsellor, adviser; singular masculine nominative
 from cōnsiliātor, cōnsiliātōris
 cōnsilium: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from
 consilium, consiliū
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 crēvisset: he had increased, came forth; 3rd person singular
 pluperfect active subjunctive from cernō, cernere, crēvī,
 crētus
 cum: when, with
 dā: give!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from
 dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dictam: suprā dictam = the above-said
 dimicent: they might fight; 3rd person plural present active
 subjunctive from dimicō, dimicāre, dimicāvi, dimicātus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixī, dictus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 Ebissa: Ebissa, a Saxon captain
 ego: I; (pronoun)
 enim: for, truly, really, indeed
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 fratueli: his brother/cousin. This wasn't in any dictionaries I
 consulted, but the meaning is clear from context. Nennius
 Interpretātus glosses it as 'filium sororis eius matris'
 Frenessicum: the North Sea, which lies off the east coast of
 England, also known as the Frisian Sea. Nennius
 Interpretātus spells it Fresicum.
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 Guaul: the Welsh (?) name of the wall the Romans built across
 Britain. This is likely Hadrian's Wall, which stood 12 feet
 tall and stretches 73 miles across northern England
 Guorthigirnum: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (accusative case)
 habitātore: dweller; singular masculine ablative from habitātor,
 habitātōris
 Hencgistus: Hengist: a Saxon captain
 homine: person; singular masculine ablative from homō,
 hominis
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulās: islands; plural feminine accusative from insula, insulae
 invitābō: I will invite; 1st person singular future active from
 invitō, invitāre, invitāvi, invitātus
 invitāret: he invited; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from invitō, invitāre, invitāvi, invitātus
 invitāvit: he invited; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 invitō, invitāre, invitāvi, invitātus
 ipsī: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ita: thusly
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō,
 iubēre, iussī, iussus
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 mea: my; singular feminine nominative from meus, mea, meum
 meum: my; singular neuter nominative from meus, mea, meum
 multitūdine: multitude, great number; singular feminine
 ablative from multitūdō, multitūdinis
 mūrum: city wall; singular masculine accusative from mūrus,
 mūrī
 nāvigārent: they sailed; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvi, nāvigātus
 neque: not, not either
 nōli: be unwilling! imperative singular of nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (irr.)
 nōn: not
 occupāvērunt: they seized, overtook, attacked; 3rd person
 plural perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi,
 occupatus
 Octha: Octha, a Saxon captain
 Orcades: The Orkney Isles, located off the northern coast of
 Scotland
 pater: father; singular masculine nominative from pater, patris
 paulātim: little by little
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 Pictōs: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
 plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus,
 multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 praeterire: to pass by, neglect; present infinitive from praetereō,
 praeterire, praeterivī(ii), praeteritus
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quae: who; plural female nominative of quis
 quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 relinquerent: they left behind; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active subjunctive from relinquo, relinquere, reliqui,
 relictus
 Scottōs: the Scots
 se: himself
 semper: always
 sum: I am; 1st person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 superārī: to be overcome; passive infinitive from superō,
 superāre, superāvī, superātus
 suprā: over, above, beyond, before
 tuī: your
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 timēbis: you will fear; 2nd person singular future active from
 timeō, timēre, timuī, -
 tuus: your; singular masculine nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūlla: any; singular feminine nominative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
 (gen -ius)
 ūllō: any; singular masculine ablative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
 (gen -ius)
 ultrā: beyond, further
 umquam: ever
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 valida: strong, healthy; singular feminine nominative from
 validus, valida, validum
 vāstāvērunt: they ravaged, they devastated; 3rd person plural
 perfect active from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
 vēnerant: they had come
 vēnerunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 virī: men; plural masculine nominative from vir, virī
 virtūtē: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine ablative
 from virtūs, virtūtis
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

39 Nam super omnia mala adiciēns Guorthigirnus accēpit filiam suī¹ uxōrem sibi, et peperit eī filium. Et hōc cum compertum esset ā sānctō Germānō, eum corripere vēnit cum omnī clērō Brittōnum. Et dum conventa esset magna synodus clēricōrum ac laicōrum in ūnō conciliō, ipse rēx praemonuit² filiam suam, ut exīret ad conventum et ut daret filium suum in sinum Germānī et ut dīceret, quod ipse erat pater filiī, et mulier fēcit sicut erat ēdocta. Germānus autem eum benīgnē accēpit et dīcere coepit: pater tibi erō nec³ tē permittam, nisi mihi novācula cum forcipe pectineque dētur et ad patrem tuum carnālem tibi dare licētur. Et obaudīvit puer et usque ad avum suum patrem carnālem Guorthigirnum perrēxit et puer illī dīxit: pater meus es, caput meum tondē et comam capitis meī. Et ille siluit et tacuit et puerō respondēre nōluit, sed surrēxit et īrātus est valdē, ut ā faciē sānctī Germānī fugeret, et maledictus est et damnātus ā sānctō Germānō et omnī Brittōnum conciliō.

¹Now adding to all (his) evil (deeds), Vortigern took his daughter to be his wife, and she bore a son to him. The theme of illegitimate or questionable paternity is recapitulated later in the account of Ambrosius, who is said to have had no father.

²The king himself commanded his daughter to go out to the meeting, that she should give his son into the lap of Germanus and should say that he (Germanus) himself was the father of the child, and the woman did just as she had been told.

³I will be your father, yet I will not permit you, unless a knife with scissors and a comb is given to me and you are permitted to give them to your biological father. Note: a more literal translation might be: I will be your father and will not let you go, unless I am given a knife with forceps and a comb and it is permitted to you to give them to your biological father. It appears that Saint Germanus, after having been falsely accused of fathering the child, says he will accept the child but that the child's biological father must first permit the child to be tonsured and therefore accepted into Germanus's religious order. This deflects the accusation and convinces the son to identify his biological father, exposing Vortigern's lie. *Nennius Interpretātus* glosses the passage as: *Germānus accēpit et dīxit pūrō: pater tibi erō. Et poscēbat Germānus novāculam et forcipem et pecten, ut daret ea in manum puerī. Et factum est et dīxit Germānus: ō fili, dā haec in manum patris tuī carnālis; et surrēxit puer et dedit pecten et forcipem et novaculum in manum Guorthigirnī et dīxit: pater mī, inquit, tondē mē, nam tū es pater meus carnālis, Germānus autem pater meus ē fide. Guorthigernum puduit et īrātus est valdē et effūgit ē conventū et omnēs Britōnēs maledīxērunt eī et Germānus damnāvit eum.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 accēpit: he took; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adiciēs: adding, raising; singular nominative present participle from adicio, adicere, adiciē, adiectus
 autem: but, however, moreover
 avum: progenitor; singular masculine accusative from avus, avi
 benignē: kind, good, friendly;
 Brittonum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine genitive from Britto, Brittonis
 capitis: head; singular neuter genitive from caput, capitis
 caput: head; singular neuter nominative from caput, capitis
 carnālem: fleshly; singular common accusative from carnālis, carnālis, carnāle
 clēricōrum: clerics; plural masculine genitive from clēricus, clērici
 clērō: clergy; singular masculine ablative from clērus, clērī
 coepit: he started; 3rd person singular present active from coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
 comam: hair; singular feminine accusative from coma, comae
 compertum: having been discovered; participle from comperio, comperire, comperi, compertus
 concilio: council; singular neuter ablative from consilium, consiliū
 conventa: having come together; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from convenio, convenire, convēni, conventus
 conventum: having come together; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from convenio, convenire, convēni, conventus
 corripere: to reproach; present infinitive from corripio, corripere, corripui, correptus
 cum: with
 damnātus: damnātus est = was condemned; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from damno, damnāre, damnāvi, damnātus
 dare: to give; present infinitive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 daret: he gave; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dētur: is given; 3rd person singular present passive subjunctive from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dicere: to say; present infinitive active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 diceret: he (might) have been saying; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 edocta: having been induced; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from edoceō, edocere, edocuī, edoctus
 eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 erō: I will be; 1st person singular future active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 es: you are; 2nd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 exiret: she went out; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from exeō, exire, exiī, exitus
 faciē: shape, figure, appearance, look; singular feminine ablative from facies, faciēs
 fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from facio, facere, fēcī, factus
 filiam: daughter; singular feminine accusative from filia, filiae
 filiū: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 forcipe: tongs, forceps; singular feminine ablative from forceps, forcipis
 fugeret: he fled; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitus
 Germāni: of Saint Germanus
 Germanō: by Saint Germanus
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Guorthigirnum: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (accusative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (nominative case)
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: that; singular dative or plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 irātus: angry; singular masculine nominative from irātus -a -um
 laicōrum: layman, one not belonging to the priesthood/in orders; plural masculine genitive from laicus, laici
 licetur: it is permitted, one may; it is all right, lawful, allowed, permitted; 3rd person singular present passive from licet, licere, licuit, licitus est
 magna: large; singular feminine nominative from magnus, magna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mala: evil, bad
 maledictus: maledictus est = was cursed
 mei: my; (pronoun)
 meum: my; singular neuter nominative from meus, mea, meum
 meus: my; singular masculine nominative from meus, mea, meum
 mihi: to me
 mulier: woman; singular feminine nominative from mulier, mulieris
 nam: yes, truly
 nec: nor, not either
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōluit: he didn't want; 3rd person singular perfect active from nōlo, nolle, nōluī, -
 novacula: sharp knife, dagger; singular feminine accusative from novacula, novaculae
 obaudivit: he obeyed, listened to; 3rd person singular perfect active from obaudio, obaudire, obaudiī, obauditus
 omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnia: all, every; plural neuter nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 pater: father; singular masculine nominative from pater, patris
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 pectine: comb; singular masculine ablative from pecten, pectinis
 peperit: she gave birth; infinitive
 permittam: I will permit; 1st person singular present active subjunctive from permitto, permittere, permisi, permissus
 perrexit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from pergo, pergere, perrexi, perrectus
 praemonuit: he commanded, forewarned; 3rd person singular perfect active from praemoneō, praemonere, praemonui, praemonitus
 puer: boy; singular masculine nominative from puer, puerī
 puerō: boy; singular masculine dative from puer, puerī
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 respondere: to respond; present infinitive from respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōsus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sancti: holy
 sanctō: holy
 sed: but
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 sicut: as, same as, like
 siluit: he was silent; 3rd person singular perfect active from sileō, silere, silui, -
 sinum: pocket, fold; singular masculine accusative from sinus, sinus
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 super: above, on top of
 surrexit: he got up; 3rd person singular perfect active from surgō, surgere, surrexi, surrectus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 synodus: synod (a religious council); singular masculine nominative from synodus, synodi
 tacuit: he was silent; 3rd person singular perfect active from taceō, tacere, tacui, tacitus
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 tibi: to you, singular dative of tu
 tondē: cut! shear!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from tondeō, tondere, tondē, tōnsus
 tuum: your; singular neuter nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
 unō: one; singular masculine ablative from unus -a -um, primus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 usque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxōris
 valdē: very
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from venio, venire, vēni, ventus

40 Et postea rex ad se invitavit magos suos, ut quid faceret ab eis interrogaret. At illi dixerunt: in extremis finibus regni tui vade et arcem munitam inuenies, ut tu defendes; quia gens, quam suscepisti¹ in regno tuo, invidet tibi et te per dolum occidet et universas regiones, quas amaras, occupabit cum tua universa² gente post mortem tuam. Et postea ipse cum magis suis arcem adipisci³ venit et per multas regiones multasque provincias circumdedierunt et illis non invenientibus⁴ ad regionem, quae vocatur Guined, novissime pervenerunt; et illo lustrante⁵ in montibus Hereri tandem in uno montium locum, in quo aptum erat arcem condere, adeptus est.

¹*Which you received into your kingdom.* The people this refers to is the Saxons, whom Vortigern let in via Hengist and Horsa.

²*And all the regions, which you love, they will occupy with their whole people after your death.* The verb is singular because gens is a singular noun that refers to the whole Saxon people.

³*And afterwards he himself with his magicians came to find/obtain the citadel/castle.*

⁴*And they not finding (the castle) at last came to the region which is called Gwynedd.*

⁵*And to that one he obtained, examining in the mountains of Hererus finally one place of the mountains, in which it was suitable to build a castle.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adeptus: adeptus est = he obtained, found; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum
 adipīsci: to gain, obtain, find; infinitive from adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum
 amārās: you had loved; 2nd person singular pluperfect active from amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus
 aptum: ready, apt;
 arcem; castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx, arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 at: and
 circumdedērunt: they surrounded; 3rd person plural perfect active from circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus
 condere: to build, to found; present infinitive active from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
 cum: with
 dēfendēs: you will defend; 2nd person singular future active from dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfensus
 dīxere: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictus
 dolum: trickery, deception; singular masculine accusative from dolus, doli
 eīs: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 extrēmīs: most exterior; plural ablative from extrēmus, -a -um
 faceret: he did; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from gēns, gentis
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from gēns, gentis
 Guined: Gwynedd, a region in Wales
 Herēri: of Hererus (?), an unknown mountain range
 illī: these; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illīs: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illō: to him; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 interrogāret: he asked; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātus
 invenientibus: finding; plural ablative present participle from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 invenies: you will find; 2nd person singular future active from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 invidet: they envy; 3rd person singular present active from invidēo, invidere, invidī, invisus
 invitāvit: he invited; 3rd person singular perfect active from invitō, invitāre, invitāvī, invitātus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī
 lūstrante: examining; singular ablative present participle from lūstrō, lūstrāre, lūstrāvī, lūstrātus
 magīs: magicians; plural masculine ablative from magus, magī
 magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus, magī
 montibus: mountains; plural masculine ablative from mōns, montis
 montium: of mountains; plural masculine genitive from mōns, montis
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 mūnitam: fortified; singular feminine accusative from mūnitus -a -um
 nōn: not
 novissimē: finally
 occīdet: they will kill; 3rd person singular future from occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus;
 occupābit: they will seize, overtake, attack; 3rd person singular future active from occupo, occupare, occupāvī, occupatus
 per: through
 pervēnerunt: they arrived; 3rd person plural perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 post: behind, after, since
 posteā: thereafter, later
 prōvinciās: provinces, commands; plural feminine accusative from prōvincia, prōvinciae
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quam: how? how much?
 quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quō: in which; singular ablative of quis
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnes: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnum, rēgnī
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter dative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 se: himself
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
 suscēpistī: you received; 2nd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
 tandem: finally
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 tibi: to you, singular dative of tu
 tu: you;(pronoun)
 tuā: you; singular feminine ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
 tuam: your; singular feminine accusative from tuus, tua, tuum
 tuī: your;(pronoun)
 tuō: your; singular masculine ablative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūniversā: whole, entire; singular feminine ablative from ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
 ūniversās: whole, entire; plural feminine accusative from ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 vāde: go!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from vādō, vādere, vāsī, -
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Et magī ad illum dīxēre: arcem in istō locō fac, quia tūtissima ā barbarīs gentibus in aeternum erit. Et ipse artificēs congregāvit, id est lapidicīnōs, et ligna et lapidēs congregāvit et cum esset congregātā omnīs mātēriā, in ūnā nocte ablāta¹ est mātēria. Et tribus vicibus iussit congregārī et nusquam² compāruit. Et magōs arcessīvit et illōs percūntātus est, quae esset³ haec causa malitiae et quid hōc ēvēnerit. At illī respondērunt: nisi īnfantem sine patre inveniēs et occīdētur ille et arx ā sanguine suō aspergātur, numquam⁴ aedificābitur in aeternum.

¹*In one night the material was taken away.* What happened to the materials isn't said. Perhaps it was supernaturally spirited away. Given that there is a lake under the building site (see section 42) some commentators have suggested that they were trying to build a castle on a marsh and that the building materials sunk overnight, or that the walls were started but broke down due to the unstable ground.

²*It appeared nowhere.* Perhaps the materials were gathered once, disappeared, and then he ordered three times for them to be gathered, or perhaps there were three separate disappearances.

³*What might be the cause of the evil and what happened to it.*

⁴*It will never be built, ever.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ablāta: ablāta est = was carried away; past passive participle from auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aedificābitur: it will be built; 3rd person singular future passive from aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
 aeternum: into the ages (literally eternal); singular neuter accusative from aeternus, aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us, aeternissimus -a -um
 arcessivit: he summoned; 3rd person singular perfect active from arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitus
 artifices: workers, artificers; plural common nominative from artifex, artificis
 arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx, arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 aspergātur: it is sprinkled; 3rd person singular present passive subjunctive from aspergō, aspergere, aspersi, aspersus
 at: and
 barbarīs: barbarous; plural ablative from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 causa: cause, reason; singular feminine nominative from causa, causae
 compāruit: it appeared, came in sight; 3rd person singular perfect active from compareo, comparere, comparui, -
 congregārī: to be gathered; passive infinitive from congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus
 congregatā: having been gathered; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus
 congregavit: he gathered; 3rd person singular perfect active from congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus
 cum: with
 dixēre: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 evēnerit: it happened; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from eveniō, evenire, evēnī, eventus
 fac: do! make!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from gens, gentis
 haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōc: this; neuter ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 id: it
 ille: he, that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: they; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 infātem: infant; singular common accusative from infāns, infantis
 inveniēs: you will find; 2nd person singular future active from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 istō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from iste, ista, istud
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus
 lapidēs: stones; plural masculine accusative from lapis, lapidis
 lapidicinōs: masons, stone-smiths; this wasn't in any dictionary I consulted but the meaning is clear from context
 ligna: wood; plural neuter accusative from lignum, lignī
 locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, loci
 magī: magicians; plural masculine nominative from magus, magī
 magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus, magi
 malitiae: of malice; singular feminine genitive from malitia, malitiae
 mātēriā: matter; singular feminine ablative from mātēria, mātēriae
 nisi: unless
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 numquam: never
 nusquam: nowhere
 occidētur: he will be killed; 3rd person singular passive future from occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus;
 omnis: all, every; singular common ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 patre: father; singular masculine ablative from pater, patris
 percūntātus: percūntātus est = he questioned strictly; variant spelling from percontor, percontārī, percontātus
 quae: what; plural female nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 respondērunt: they responded; 3rd person plural perfect active from respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsus
 sanguine: blood; singular masculine ablative from sanguis, sanguinis
 sine: without
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tūtissima: very safe; singular feminine nominative from tūtus, tūta -um, tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis

41 Et ipse lēgātōs ex cōnsiliō magōrum per ūniversam Brittanniam mīsit, utrum
īfantem sine patre invenīrent. Et lūstrandō omnēs prōvinciās regiōnēsq̄e plūrimās
vēnēre ad campum Ellētī, quī est in regiōne, quae vocātur Gleguissing, et pilae¹
lūdum faciēbant puerī. Et ecce duo inter sē litigābant, et dīxit alter alterī: ō homō
sine patre, bonum² nōn habēbis. At illī dē puerō ad puerōs dīligenter
percūntābantur, et cūntantēs mātrem, sī patrem habēret. Illa negāvit et dīxit:
nesciō quōmodo in uterō meō conceptus est, sed ūnum sciō, quia virum nōn cognōvī
umquam, et iūrāvit illīs patrem nōn habēre. Et illī eum sēcum dūxēre usque ad
Guorthigirnum rēgem et eum īnsinuāvērunt regī.

¹*And boys were playing a game with a ball.*

²*O human without a father, you will not have good. This is an insult and a curse.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
alter: the one (boy); singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum
alteri: to the other; singular dative from alter, altera, alterum
at: and
bonum: good; singular neuter accusative from bonum, boni
Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
campum: field; singular masculine accusative from campus, campi
cognōvī: I knew; 1st person singular perfect active from cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus
conceptus: conceptus est = was conceived; past passive participle from concipiō, concipere, concēpī, conceptus
cōnsiliō: plan, advice, council; singular neuter ablative from consilium, consilii
cunctantēs: questioning (literally delaying); plural common nominative participle from cunctō, cunctāre, cunctāvī, cunctātus
dē: of, from, away from, down from
diligenter: diligently
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
duo: two
dūxere: they lead; 3rd person plural perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus
ecce: Look! Behold!
Ellētī: the name of a field in Gleguissing
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
ex: out of, from
faciēbant: they were doing, they were making; 3rd person plural imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
Gleguissing: likely Glywysing, a petty kingdom in southwest Wales
Guorthigirnum: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (accusative case)
habēbis: you will have; 2nd person singular future active from habeo, habere, habuī, habitus
habere: to have; present infinitive active from habeo, habere, habuī, habitus
haberet: he (might) have had; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from habeo, habere, habuī, habitus
homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
illa: she, that one; singular feminine nominative from ille, illa, illud
illī: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
illis: to them; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
infātem: infant; singular common accusative from infāns, infantis
insinuāvērunt: they introduced, gave; 3rd person plural perfect active from insinuō, insinuāre, insinuāvī, insinuātus
inter: between, among, during
invenirent: they found; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
iūrāvit: he swore; 3rd person singular perfect active from iuro, jurare, juravi, juratus
lēgātōs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine accusative perfect passive participle from lego, legare, legavi, legatus
litigābant: they quarrelled; 3rd person plural imperfect active from litigō, litigāre, litigāvī, litigātus
lūdum: game; singular masculine accusative from lūdus, lūdī
lūstrandō: having examined; singular masculine ablative future passive participle from lūstrō, lūstrāre, lūstrāvī, lūstrātus
magōrum: of magicians; plural masculine genitive from magus, magī
māترم: mother; singular feminine accusative from māter, mātris
meō: my; singular neuter ablative from meus
mīsīt: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
negāvit: she denied, refused; 3rd person singular perfect active from negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus
nesciō: I don't know; 1st person singular present active from nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescītus
nōn: not
ō: O (an interjection)
omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
patre: father; singular masculine ablative from pater, patris
patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
per: through
percunctābantur: they were questioned strictly; variant spelling from percontor, percontārī, percontātus
pilae: ball; singular feminine genitive from pila, pilae

plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
prōvinciās: provinces; plural feminine accusative from prōvincia, prōvinciae
puerī: boys; plural masculine nominative from puer, puerī
puerō: boy; singular masculine ablative from puer, puerī
puerōs: boys; plural masculine accusative from puer, puerī
quae: which; plural female nominative of quis
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quia: that
quōmodo: how, by which means
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
rēgī: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
sciō: I know; 1st person singular present active from sciō, scire, scivī, scitus
se: himself
sēcum: with oneself
sed: but
sī: if
sine: without
umquam: ever
ūniversam: whole, entire; singular feminine accusative from ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
ūsque: until, all the way, up until
uterō: womb; singular masculine ablative from uterum, uterī
utrum: whether
vērē: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
virum: man; singular masculine accusative from vir, virī
vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

42 Et in crāstinō conventiō facta est, ut puer interficerētur. Et puer ad rēgem dīxit: 'Cūr virī tuī mē ad tē dētulērunt?' Cui rēx ait: 'Ut interficiāris et sanguis tuus circā arcem istam aspergētur, ut possit aedificārī.' Respondit puer rēgī: 'Quis tibi mōnstrāvit?' Et rēx: 'magī meī mihi dīxēre.' Et puer dīxit: 'Ad mē vocentur¹.' Et invītātī sunt magī et puer illīs dīxit: 'Quis revēlāvit vōbīs, ut ista arx ā sanguine meō aspergerētur²? Et nisi aspergerētur ā sanguine meō, in aeternum nōn aedificābitur? Sed hoc³ ut cognōscat is, quis mihi dē mē palam fēcit?' Iterum puer dīxit, 'Modo tibi, ō rēx, ēlūcubrābō⁴ et in vērītāte tibi omnia satagam; sed magōs tuōs percūnctor: quid in pavīmentō istīus locī est? Placet mihi, ut ostendant tibi, quid sub pavīmentō habētur.' At illī dīxēre: 'Nescīmus.' Et ille dīxit: 'Comperior: stāgnū in mediō pavīmentī est; venīte et fodite et sīc inveniētis.' Vēnērunt et fōdērunt, et ruit⁵. Et puer ad magōs dīxit: 'Prōferte mihi, quid est in stāgnō?' Et siluērunt et nōn potuērunt revēlāre illī. Et ille dīxit illīs: 'Ego vōbīs revēlābō; duo vāsa sunt et sīc inveniētis.' Vēnērunt et vīdērunt sīc. Et puer ad magōs dīxit: 'Quid in vāsīs conclūsīs habētur?' At ipsī siluērunt et nōn potuērunt revēlārī illī.

¹*Let them be called to me.* *vocentur* is a iussive subjunctive.

²*Who revealed to you, that this castle should be sprinkled with my blood?* The *should* comes from *aspergerētur* being a iussive subjunctive in this sentence (however, in the next sentence it is not a iussive subjunctive, but is subjunctive because it is in a conditional statement).

³*But so that he might know this, who appointed me openly?* The boy (Ambrosius) is challenging the magicians.

⁴*Again the boy said: "Now to you, O king, I will burn the midnight oil and handle everything in truth for you."*

⁵*They came and dug, and it collapsed.* Apparently there was an underground lake underneath where they were building; perhaps this explains where the building materials went.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aedificābitur: it will be built; 3rd person singular future passive
 from aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
 aedificāri: to be built; passive infinitive from aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
 aeternum: in aeternum = ever (literally 'eternal'); singular
 neuter accusative from aeternus, aeterna -um, aeternior -or
 -us, aeternissimus -a -um
 ait: he said; 3rd person singular present active from aio, -, -
 arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx,
 arcis
 arx: citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 aspergeretur: it was sprinkled, inflicted; 3rd person singular
 imperfect passive subjunctive from aspergō, aspergere,
 aspersi, aspersus
 aspergetur: it will be sprinkled; 3rd person singular future
 passive from aspergō, aspergere, aspersi, aspersus
 at: and
 circā: around, about, concerning
 cognōscat: he might know; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus
 comperior: I ascertain; 1st person singular present passive
 (though from context, active) from comperio, comperire,
 comperi, compertus;
 conclusiō: having been enclosed; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from concludō, concludere, conclusi, conclusus
 conventiō: meeting of people; singular feminine nominative
 from conventiō, conventiōnis
 crāstinō: tomorrow; singular masculine ablative from crāstinus,
 crāstina, crāstinum
 cui: whom; singular dative from quis
 cūr: why
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dētulerunt: they brought, transferred; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from deferō, deferre, dētuli, dētulus
 dixerē: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixi, dictus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixi, dictus
 duo: two
 ego: I; (pronoun)
 elucubrābō: I will burn the midnight oil; 1st person singular
 future active from elucubrō, elucubrāre, elucubrāvī,
 elucubrātus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 facta est = was made; singular feminine nominative perfect
 passive participle from faciō, facere, feci, factus
 fecit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,
 facere, feci, factus
 fōderunt: they dug; 3rd person plural perfect active from fodiō,
 fodere, fodi, fossus
 fodite: dig!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from
 fodiō, fodere, fodi, fossus
 habetur: it is held; 3rd person singular present passive from
 habēō, habēre, habui, habitus
 hoc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: that; singular dative or plural masculine nominative from
 ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 interficeretur: he might be killed; 3rd person singular imperfect
 passive subjunctive from interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfectus
 interficiāris: you kill; 2nd person singular present passive
 subjunctive from interficiō, interficere, interfeci, interfectus
 invenietis: you will find; 2nd person plural future active from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 invitāti: invitāti sunt = were invited; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum
 is: he; singular masculine nominative from is, ea, id
 ista: this; singular feminine nom. or abl. or plural neuter nom.
 or acc. from iste, ista, istud
 istam: that; singular feminine accusative from iste, ista, istud
 istius: of this; singular genitive from iste, ista, istud
 iterum: again
 loci: place; singular masculine genitive from locus, loci
 magi: magicians; plural masculine nominative from magus, magi
 magos: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus,
 magi
 mē: to me, accusative from ego
 mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,
 medium
 mē: my; (pronoun)
 meō: my; singular masculine or neuter dative or ablative from
 meus
 mihi: to me; (pronoun)
 modo: now, presently
 monstravit: he pointed out; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from monstrō, monstrāre, monstrāvī, monstrātus
 nescimus: we do not know; 1st person plural present active
 from nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitus
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōn: not
 Ō: O, an interjection
 omnia: everything; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 ostendant: let them show; 3rd person plural present active
 subjunctive from ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostensus
 palam: openly, publicly
 pavimenti: floor, pavement, tiling; singular neuter genitive from
 pavimentum, pavimenti
 pavimentō: floor, pavement, tiling; singular neuter ablative from
 pavimentum, pavimenti
 percunctor: I question strictly; variant spelling from percontor,
 percontari, percontatus
 placet: it pleases; 3rd person singular present active from
 placeō, placere, placui, placitus
 possit: he (may) be able; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from possum, posse, potui, -
 potuerunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from possum, posse, potui, -
 prōferte: bring forward!; 2nd person plural present active
 imperative from prōferō, prōferre, prōtuli, prōlātus
 puer: boy; singular masculine nominative from puer, pueri
 quid: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 quis: who
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
 respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōsus
 revelābō: I will reveal; 1st person singular future active from
 revelō, revelāre, revelāvī, revelātus
 revelāre: to reveal; present infinitive from revelō, revelāre,
 revelāvī, revelātus
 revelāri: to be revealed; passive infinitive from revelō, revelāre,
 revelāvī, revelātus
 revelāvīt: he revealed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 revelō, revelāre, revelāvī, revelātus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 ruit: it fell, collapsed; 3rd person singular present active from
 ruō, ruere, rui, rūtus
 sanguine: blood; singular masculine ablative from sanguis,
 sanguinis
 sanguis: blood; singular masculine nominative from sanguis,
 sanguinis
 satagam: I will be handling everything (literally 'I will bustle
 about, have my hands full'); 1st person singular present
 active subjunctive from satagō, satagere, satēgī, satāctus
 sed: but
 sic: thus
 siluerunt: they were silent; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from sileō, silere, silui, -
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from stagnum,
 stagni
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, stagni
 sub: below, under
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 tē: to you, accusative from tu
 tibi: to you, singular dative of tu
 tui: your; (pronoun)
 tuos: your; plural masculine accusative from tuus, tua, tuum
 tuus: your; singular masculine nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ut: so that
 vasa: vessels; plural neuter nominative from vāsum, vāsī
 vāsīs: vessels; plural masculine ablative from vāsum, vāsī
 vērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 venite: come!; infinitive
 veritate: truth; singular feminine ablative from veritās, veritātis
 viderunt: they saw
 viri: men; plural neuter nominative from virus, viri
 vobis: you; plural dative or ablative from tu
 vocentur: let them be called; 3rd person plural present passive
 subjunctive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

At ille asseruit: 'In mediō eōrum tentōrium est, sēparāte ea et sīc inveniētis.' Et rēx sēparārī iussit et sīc inventum est tentōrium complicātum, sicut dīxerat. Et iterum interrogāvit magōs eius: 'Quid in mediō tentōriī est? Et iam nunc nārrātē', et nōn potuērunt scīre. At ille revēlāvit: 'Duo vermēs in eō sunt, ūnus albus et ūnus rūfus; tentōrium expandite.' Et extendērunt et duo vermēs dormientēs inventī sunt. Et dīxit puer: 'Expectātē et cōnsīderātē quid facient vermēs'; et coepērunt vermēs, ut alter¹ alterum expelleret, alius autem scapulās suās pōnēbat, ut eum usque ad dīmidium tentōriī expelleret, et sīc faciēbant tribus vicibus: tamen tandem īnfirrior vidēbātur vermis rūfus et postea fortior albō fuit et extrā finem tentōriī expulit; tunc alter alterum secūtus trāns stāgnum est et tentōrium ēvānuit. Et puer ad magōs refert: 'Quid significat mīrābile hoc signum, quod factum est in tentōriō?' Et illī prōferunt: 'Nescīmus.' Et puer respondit: 'Ēn revēlātum est mihi hoc mystērium et ego vōbīs prōpalābō.'

¹And the worms began (to fight), so that one might expel the other, however the other put his shoulders, so that he might expel him from half of the tent, and thus they did three times: however finally the red worm was seen to be weaker and afterwards was stronger than the white (worm) and expelled him outside the confines of the tent; then they followed each other across the pond and the tent vanished.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
albō: white; singular masculine ablative from albus, alba -um, albiōr -or -us, albissimus -a -um
albus: white; singular masculine nominative from albus, alba -um, albiōr -or -us, albissimus -a -um
alius: other; singular masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum
alterum: the other; singular neuter nominative from alter, altera, alterum
asseruit: he claimed; 3rd person singular perfect active from asserō, asserere, asseruī, assertus
at: and
autem: but, however, moreover
coepērunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum
complicātum: folded up, rolled up; singular neuter accusative
past passive participle from complicāre
cōsiderāte: consider! plural imperative from cōsiderō, cōsiderāre, cōsiderāvī, cōsiderātus
dīmīdium: half; singular neuter accusative from dīmīdium, dīmīdī
dixerat: he had said; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dormiētēs: sleeping; plural common nominative present participle from dormiō, dormire, dormivī, dormitus
duo: two
ea: them; plural neuter accusative from is, ea, id
ego: I; (pronoun)
eius: his/her/its
ēn: behold!
eō: in it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
et: and
eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
evānuīt: it vanished; 3rd person singular perfect active from evānēscō, evānēscere, evānuī, -
expandite: spread out! expand!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from expandō, expandere, expandī, expānsus
expectāte: await!; plural imperative from expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātus
expelleret: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
expulit: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
extendērunt: they stretched out; 3rd person plural perfect active from extendō, extendere, extendī, extensus
extrā: outside of, beyond
faciēbant: they were doing, they were making; 3rd person plural imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
facient: they will do, they will make; 3rd person plural future active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
factum: factum est = was done; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
finem: boundary, end, limit; singular common accusative from finis, finis
fortior: stronger; singular common nominative from fortis, forte, fortior -or -us, fortissimus -a -um
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
hoc: this; singular neuter nominative of hic, haec, hoc
iam: already, now, soon
ille: he, that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
illī: they; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
infirrior: weaker; singular common nominative from infirmus, infirma -um, infirrior -or -us, infirmissimus -a -um
interrogāvit: he asked; 3rd person singular perfect active from interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātus
inveniētis: you will find; 2nd person plural future active from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
inventī: having been found; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from invenio, invenire, invēnī, inventus
inventum: having been found; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from invenio, invenire, invēnī, inventus
iterum: again
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus
magōs: magicians; plural masculine accusative from magus, magī
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,

medium
mihī: to me; (pronoun)
mirābile: marvelous, wonderful; singular neuter nominative from mirābilis, mirābilis, mirābile
mystērīum: mystery; singular neuter nominative from mysterium, mysteriū
nārrātē: narrate!; plural imperative from nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus
nescimus: we do not know; 1st person plural present active from nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitus
nōn: not
nunc: now
pōnēbat: it was placing; 3rd person singular imperfect from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
postea: thereafter, later
potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
prōferunt: they bring forward; 3rd person plural present active from prōferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus
prōpalābō: I will make visible, manifest; 1st person singular future active from propalo, propalare, -, propalatus
puer: boy; singular masculine nominative from puer, puerī
quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
refert: he says, brings back (the conversation); 3rd person singular present active from referō, referre, rettulī, relātus
respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active from respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōnsus
revēlātum: having been shown, revealed; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from
revēlāvit: he revealed; 3rd person singular perfect active from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
rūfus: red, ruddy; singular masculine nominative from rūfus, rūfa -um, rūfior -or -us, rūfissimus -a -um
scapulās: shoulders, back; plural feminine accusative from scapula, scapulae
scīre: to know; present infinitive from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus
secūtus: secūtus + est = he followed; from sequor, sequī, sēcūtus
sēparārī: to be divided, separated; passive infinitive from sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātus
sēparāte: divide! separate!; infinitive
sīc: thus
sicut: as, same as, like
significat: it signifies; 3rd person singular present active from significō, significāre, significāvī, significātus
signum: sign; singular neuter nominative from signum, signī
stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter accusative from stagnum, stagnī
suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
tamen: however
tandem: finally
tentōriū: tent; singular neuter genitive from tentorium, tentoriū
tentōriō: tent; singular neuter ablative from tentorium, tentoriū
tentōrium: tent; singular neuter nominative from tentorium, tentoriū
trāns: across, beyond; (preposition)
tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, ternī -ae -a, ter
tunc: then
ūnus: one
ūsq̄ue: until, all the way, up until
ut: so that
vermēs: worms; plural masculine nominative from vermis, vermis
vermis: worm; singular masculine nominative from vermis, vermis
vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
vidēbātur: he was appearing; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from videō, vidēre, vidī, visus
vōbīs: you; plural dative or ablative from tu

'Rēgnī tuī figūra tentōrium est; duo vermēs duo dracōnēs sunt; vermis rūfus dracō tuus est et stāgnum figūra huius mundī est. At ille albus dracō illius gentis¹, quae occupāvit gentēs et regiōnēs plūrimās in Brittanniā, et paene ā marī usque ad mare tenēbunt, et posteā gēns nostra surget, et gentem Anglōrum trāns mare virīliter dēiciet. Tū tamen dē istā arce vāde, quia eam aedificāre nōn potes, et multās prōvinciās circumī, ut arcem tūtā inveniās, et ego hīc manēbō.' Et rēx adolēscentem dīxit: 'Quō nōmine vocārīs?' Ille respondit: 'Ambrosius vocor, id est, Embreis Guletic ipse vidēbātur.' Et rēx dīxit: 'Dē quā prōgeniē ortus es?' At ille: 'Ūnus est pater² meus dē cōsulibus Rōmānicae gentis.' Et arcem dēdit illī³ cum omnibus rēgnīs occidentālis plāgae Brittanniae et ipse cum magis suīs ad sinistrālem plāgam pervēnit et usque ad regiōnem, quā vocātur Guunnessī, adfuit et urbem ibī, quae vocātur suō nōmine Cair Guorthigirn, aedificāvit.

¹The white dragon represents the Anglo-Saxons.

²Here the boy says that he does have a father. Perhaps his mother was incorrect in stating that he had no father, perhaps the boy is making up an ancestry, or perhaps this account is an amalgamation of several stories.

³And he (Vortigern) gave the castle to him (Ambrosius) with all the kingdom of the western coast of Britain, and he himself with his magicians came to the northern coast up to the region which is called Guunnessī. I've chosen to gloss *sinistrālem* as *northern* to follow the scribe who wrote *Nennius Interpretātus*, apparently following a medieval convention of orienting maps with east at the top. The castle hadn't yet been built, so perhaps *arcem dēdit illī* means he gave him the building site and the materials. *Nennius Interpretātus* glosses this passage as: *Dedit igitur Guorthigirnus arcem Ambrosiō et rēgnum totius occidentālis Britanniae et ipse cum suīs magīs ad septentrionālem plāgam īnsulae Britanniae pervēnit usque ad regiōnem cui est nōmen Guunis, et arcem ibī aedificāvit, cuius nōmen Caer Guorthigirn.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adfuit: he was present; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus
 adolescētem: young man; singular masculine accusative from
 adolescēns, adolescētis
 aedificāre: to build; present infinitive from aedificō, aedificāre,
 aedificāvī, aedificātus
 aedificāvit: he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
 albus: white; singular masculine nominative from albus, alba
 -um, albior -or -us, albiſſimus -a -um
 Ambrosius: Ambrosius (Merlinus)
 Anglōrum: of the Anglos, Englishmen; plural masculine genitive
 from Anglus, Angli
 arce: castle, citadel; singular feminine ablative from arx, arcis
 arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx,
 arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 at: and
 Britannia: in Britain
 Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Cair Guorthigirn: the name of a city that Vortigern built
 circumī: go around!; singular imperative from circumēō,
 circumire, circumī, circumitus
 cōsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from cōsul,
 cōsulis
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,
 dedī, datus
 dēiciet: (our people) will cast out; 3rd person singular future
 active from dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixī, dictus
 dracō: dragon, snake; singular masculine nominative from
 dracō, dracōnis
 dracōnēs: dragons, snakes; plural masculine nominative from
 dracō, dracōnis
 duo: two
 eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 ego: I; (pronoun)
 Embreis: Embreis Guletic, Ambrosius's name in Welsh
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 figurā: figure, symbol; singular feminine nominative from figurā,
 figurāe
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, gentis
 gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine accusative from
 gēns, gentis
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from gēns, gentis
 Guletic: Embreis Guletic, Ambrosius's name in Welsh
 Guorthigirn: Cair Guorthigirn, the name of a city that Vortigern
 built
 Guunnessi: a region of England
 hic: here
 huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc
 ibi: there, then
 id: it
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 invenias: you discover; 2nd person singular present active
 subjunctive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 istā: that; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 magis: rather, more
 manebō: I will remain; 1st person singular future active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsī, māsus
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 mari: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 meus: my; singular masculine nominative from meus, mea,
 meum
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 nostra: our; singular feminine nominative from noster, nostra,
 nostrum
 occidentālis: western; singular common nominative from
 occidentālis, occidentālis, occidentāle
 occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 ortus: ortus es = you were born; from orior, orīrī, ortus
 paene: almost
 pater: father; singular masculine nominative from pater, patris
 pervēnit: he arrives; 3rd person singular present active from
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 plāgae: of the coast; singular feminine genitive from plāga,
 plāgae
 plāgam: coast; singular feminine accusative from plāga, plāgae
 plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus,
 multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 posteā: thereafter, later
 potes: you can; 2nd person singular present active from
 possum, posse, potuī, -
 prōgeniē: race, family, progeny; singular feminine ablative from
 prōgeniēs, prōgeniēi
 prōvinciās: provinces; plural feminine accusative from
 prōvincia, prōvinciae
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quia: because
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine nominative or accusative
 from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgni: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnum,
 rēgni
 rēgnis: kingdoms; plural neuter ablative from rēgnum, rēgni
 respondit: he responded; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōsus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rōmānicae: Romanic; singular feminine genitive from
 Romanicus, Romanica, Romanicum
 rūfus: red, ruddy; singular masculine nominative from rūfus,
 rūfa -um, rūfior -or -us, rūfissimus -a -um
 sinistralem: left-hand; singular common accusative from
 sinistra, sinistrae
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, stagni
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 surget: he will lift; 3rd person singular future active from surgō,
 surgere, surrēxi, surrēctus
 tamen: however
 tenēbunt: they will hold; 3rd person plural future active from
 teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 tentōrium: tent; singular neuter nominative or accusative from
 tentorium, tentoriī
 trāns: across, beyond; (preposition)
 tu: you; (pronoun)
 tui: your; (pronoun)
 tūtām: safe; singular feminine accusative from tūtus, tūta -um,
 tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
 tuus: your; singular masculine nominative from tuus, tua, tuum
 ūnus: one
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vāde: go!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from
 vādō, vādere, vāsī, -
 vermēs: worms; plural masculine nominative from vermis,
 vermis
 vermis: worm; singular masculine nominative from vermis,
 vermis
 vidēbātur: it was appearing; 3rd person singular imperfect
 passive from videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus
 viriliter: strongly
 vocāris: will you be called; 2nd person singular future passive
 from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 vocor: I am called; 1st person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

43 Intereā Guorthemir filius Guorthigirn cum Hengistō et Horsō et cum gente illōrum petulanter pugnābant et eōs usque ad supradictam īnsulam, quae vocātur Tanet, expulit et eōs ibī tribus vicibus conclūsit¹ obsēdit percussit comminuit terruit. Et ipsī lēgātōs ultrā mare usque in Germāniam trāsmittēbant vocandō ciūlās cum ingentī numerō bellātōrum virōrum. Et posteā pugnābant contrā rēgēs nostrae gentis: aliquandō vincēbantur et expellēbantur.

¹*And there three times he confined, beseiged, struck, crushed, and terrified them.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquandō: finally, sometimes
 bellātorum: of fighters; plural masculine genitive from bellātor,
 bellātōris
 ciulās: longships; plural feminine accusative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 comminuit: he crushed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 comminuō, comminuere, comminui, comminūtus
 conclūsit: he confined; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 conclūdō, conclūdere, conclūsī, conclūsus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 et: and
 expellēbantur: they were driven out; 3rd person plural
 imperfect passive from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 expulit: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gens, gentis
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive
 from gēns, gentis
 Germaniam: Germany; singular feminine accusative from
 Germānia, Germāniae
 Guorthemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 Guorthigirn: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern)
 Hengistō: with Hengist, the Saxon warrior (ablative case)
 Horsō: with Horsa, the Saxon warrior (ablative case)
 ibi: there, then
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille,
 illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ingentī: huge, enormous; singular ablative from ingēns, ingentis
 (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
 īnsulam: island; singular feminine accusative from īnsula,
 īnsulae
 intereā: during
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lēgātōs: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine accusative from
 lēgātus, lēgātī
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 nostrae: our; singular feminine genitive of noster
 nūmērō: number; singular masculine ablative from numerus,
 nūmerī
 obsēdit: he besieged; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus
 percussit: he struck; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus
 petulanter: impudently, adverb from petulāns
 postea: thereafter, later
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, regis
 suprādictam: the above-said; past passive participle from
 suprādicō, suprādicere, suprādicī, suprādictus
 Tanet: the island of Thanet, which laid off the southeast coast of
 England. It is now a peninsula, not an island.
 terruit: he frightened; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus
 trāsmittēbant: they sent across; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from trāsmittō, trāsmittere, trāsmisī, trāsmisus
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 ultrā: beyond, further
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vicibus: times; plural feminine from vicis, vicis
 vincēbantur: they were conquered; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive from vincō, vincere, vicī, victus
 virōrum: of the men; plural masculine nominative from vir, virī
 vocandō: for calling; singular masculine ablative gerund from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

44 Et Guorthemir contrā illōs quattuor bella avidē gessit. Prīmum bellum super flūmen Derguentid; secundum bellum super vadum, quod dīcitur in linguā eōrum Episford, in nostrā autem linguā Rithergabail, et ibī cecidit Hors cum filiō Guorthigirnī, cuius nōmen erat Categirn. Tertium bellum in campō iuxtā lapidem¹ titulī, quī est super rīpam Gallicī maris, commisit et barbarī vīctī sunt et ille victor fuit et ipsī in fugam versī usque ad ciūlās suās mersī² sunt in eās muliebriter intransēs. Ille autem post modicum intervāllum mortuus est et ante mortem suam ad familiam suam dixit, ut sepulchrum illius in portū pōnerent, ā quō exierant, super rīpam maris, in quō vōbīs commendō: quamvis³ in aliā parte portum Brittanniae teneant et habitāverint, tamen in istā terrā in aeternum nōn manēbunt. Illī autem mandātum eius contempsērunt et eum in locō, in quō imperāverat illīs, nōn sepeliērunt.

¹*Next to the inscribed stone.* The battle took place next to some sort of stone monument.

²*They themselves turned in flight until their boats, and, entering womanly, hid in them.* *mersī sunt* almost certainly means 'they hid' in this context. *Nennius Interpretātus* glosses this as *Saxonēs in fugam versī sunt usque ad suās ciūlās muliebriter*.

³*Although they (the Saxons) in another part of Britain might hold a port and have lived in it, yet in this land they will not ever dwell.* Vortimer may be invoking some sort of magic where his buried body would prevent the Saxons from conquering the place where it was buried.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aeternum: eternal; singular neuter nominative from aeternus,
 aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us, aeternissimus -a -um
 aliā: other; singular feminine ablative from alius, alia, aliud
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 autem: but, however, moreover
 avidē: eagerly, ardently; adverb from avidus, avida -um, avidior
 -or -us, avidissimus -a -um
 barbarī: barbarian; plural masculine nominative from barbarus,
 barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 bella: battles, wars; plural neuter accusative from bellum, belli
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum,
 belli
 Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 campō: field; singular masculine ablative from campus, campī
 Categirn: a son of Vortigern
 cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidī, cāsus
 ciulās: longships; plural feminine accusative variant spelling
 from ceola, ceolae
 commendō: I entrust, commit, recommend; 1st person singular
 present active from commendō, commendāre, commendāvī,
 commendātus
 commisit: he carried on (a fight); 3rd person singular perfect
 active from committō, committere, commisi, commissus
 contempserunt: they contemned, they held in contempt; 3rd
 person plural perfect active from contemnō, contemnere,
 contempsī, contemptus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
 cum: with
 Derguentid: the name of a river
 dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō,
 dicere, dixī, dictus
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixī, dictus
 eās: their; plural feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive
 Episford: the name of a river ford
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 exierant: they had set forth; 3rd person plural pluperfect active
 from exeō, exīre, exī, exitus
 familiam: family; singular feminine accusative from familia,
 familiae
 filiō: son; singular masculine ablative from filius, fili
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 fugam: flight, escape; singular feminine accusative from fuga,
 fugae
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 Gallici: Gallic; singular masculine genitive from Gallicus,
 Gallica, Gallicum
 gessit: he waged, carried; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 Guorthernir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 Guorthigirmi: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 habitāverint: they had inhabited; 3rd person plural perfect
 active subjunctive from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 Hors: Horsa, a Saxon warrior
 ibi: there, then
 ille: he, that one; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa,
 illud
 illi: they, those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: those; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 imperāverat: he had commanded; 3rd person singular
 pluperfect active from imperō, imperāre, imperāvī,
 imperātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intervallum: interval (of time); singular neuter accusative from
 intervallum, intervalli
 intrans: entering; plural common nominative present
 participle from intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
 ipsi: itself; sing. dative or plural masc. nom. from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 istā: that; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 lapidem: stone; singular masculine accusative from lapis, lapidis
 linguā: tongue, language; singular feminine ablative from
 lingua, linguae
 locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, loci
 mandātum: mandate; singular masculine accusative from
 mandātum, mandātī
 manēbunt: they will remain; 3rd person plural future active
 from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
 mersi: mersi sunt = they hid; plural masculine nominative
 perfect passive participle from mergō, mergere, mersi,
 mersus
 modicum: a little; singular neuter accusative from modicum,
 modica
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 mortuus: mortuus est = he died;
 muliebriter: cowardly, womanly (adverb from muliebris,
 muliebre)
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 nostrā: our; singular feminine ablative from noster, nostra,
 nostrum
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 pōnerent: they might place; 3rd person plural imperfect
 subjunctive from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
 portū: harbor, port; singular masculine ablative from portus,
 portūs
 portum: harbor, port; singular masculine accusative from
 portus, portūs
 post: behind, after, since
 primum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 primum
 quamvis: although
 quattuor: 4
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 ripam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from ripa,
 ripae
 Rithergabail: the name of a river ford
 secundum: second
 sepelivērunt: they buried; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
 sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter accusative from
 sepulchrum, sepulchrī
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
 super: above, on top of
 tamen: however
 teneant: they (might) hold; 3rd person plural present active
 subjunctive from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 terrā: land; singular feminine ablative from terra, terrae
 tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tituli: inscription, token; singular masculine genitive from
 titulus, tituli
 usque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vadum: shallows; singular neuter accusative from vadum, vadī
 versī: having been turned; plural masculine nominative perfect
 passive participle from vertō, vertere, vertī, versus
 vīctī: vīctī sunt = they were conquered; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor,
 victōris
 vōbīs: you; plural dative or ablative from tu

45 At barbarī reversī sunt magnō opere, cum Guorthigirnis amīcus¹ illīs erat propter uxōrem suam et nūllus illōs abigere audācter valuit, quia nōn dē virtūte suā Britanniam occupāvērunt, sed dē nūtū Deī. Contrā voluntātem Deī quis resistere poterit et nitātus? Sed quōmodo² voluit Dominus fēcit et ipse omnēs gentēs regit et gubernat.

Factum est autem post mortem Guorthemir rēgis Guorthigirni filiū et post reversionem Hengisti cum suis turbis cōsiliū fallāx³ hortātī sunt, ut dolum Guorthigirni cum exercitū suō facerent. At illi lēgātōs, ut impetrārent pācem, mīsērunt, ut perpetua amicitia inter illōs fieret. At ille Guorthegirnus cum suis maiōribus nātū⁴ cōsiliū fēcērunt et scrūtātī sunt, quid facerent; tandem ūnum cōsiliū cum omnibus fuit, ut pācem facerent, et lēgātī eōrum reversī sunt et postea conventum addūxērunt, ut ex utrāque parte Brittonēs et Saxonēs in ūnum sine armīs convenīrent, ut firma amicitia esset.

¹*And the barbarians returned with great forces, and Vortigern was a friend to them because of his wife and no one was strong to audaciously drive them away, because not by their strength did they occupy Britain, but by the will of God.* Recall that Vortigern's wife was Hengist's daughter; see section 37.

²*But, however He wanted, the Lord (God) did, and He Himself reigns and governs all the peoples.*

³*They encouraged a false counsel, that they might make a trick of Vortigern with his army.*

⁴*With his elders by birth.*

abigere: to drive away; present infinitive from abigō, abigere, abēgī, abāctus
 addūxērunt: they lead, persuaded; 3rd person plural perfect active from addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus
 amicitia: friendship; singular feminine nominative from amicitia, amicitiae
 amīcus: friend; singular masculine nominative from amicus, amica -um, amicior -or -us, amicissimus -a -um
 armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 at: and
 audācter: audaciously
 autem: but, however, moreover
 barbarī: barbarian; plural masculine nominative from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine nominative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from consilium, consili(i)
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 convenirent: they (might) have met together; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from conveniō, convenire, convēni, conventus
 conventum: meeting, agreement; singular feminine accusative from conventus, conventūs
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Dei: of God; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 dolum: trickery, deception; singular masculine accusative from dolus, doli
 Dominus: Lord; singular masculine nominative from Dominus, Domini
 eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter. genitive
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus
 facerent: they did; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 factum: factum est = it happened; from fiō, fieri, factus sum
 fallāx: deceitful, misleading; singular nominative from fallāx, fallācis (gen.), fallācior -or -us, fallācissimus -a -um
 fēcērunt: they did, they made; 3rd person plural perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fieret: it happened; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fieri, factus sum
 filiī: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 firma: firm; singular feminine nominative from firmus, firma -um, firmior -or -us, firmissimus -a -um
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 gentēs: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine nominative from gens, gentis
 gubernat: he steers, directs, guides; 3rd person singular present active from gubernō, gubernāre, gubernāvī, gubernātus
 Guorthegirnus: Vortigern
 Guorthemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 Guorthigirni: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirnis: Vortigern
 Hengisti: of Hengist, a Saxon warrior
 hortātī: hortātī sunt = they encouraged; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from hortor, hortari, hortātus
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illī: that; singular dative or plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 impetrārent: they obtained; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lēgātī: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine nominative from lēgātus, lēgātī
 lēgātōs: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine accusative from lēgātus, lēgātī
 māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 maiōribus: bigger; plural ablative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 misērunt: they sent; 3rd person plural perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 nātū: birth; singular neuter ablative from nascor, nasci, nātus sum
 nītatus: command; variant spelling from nūtus, nūtūs
 nōn: not
 nullus: no, none, not any; singular masculine nominative from nullus, nulla, nullum (gen -ius)
 nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from nūtus, nūtūs
 occupāverunt: they seized, overtook, attacked; 3rd person plural perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 opere: extent; singular neuter ablative from opus, operis
 pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pax, pācis
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 perpetua: perpetual; singular feminine nominative from perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum
 post: behind, after, since
 postea: thereafter, later
 poterit: he will be able to; 3rd person singular future active from possum, posse, potui, -
 propter: because of, near
 quia: because
 quid: who; singular neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quis: who
 quōmodo: how, by which means
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 regit: he rules; 3rd person singular present active from regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus
 resistere: to resist; present infinitive from resistō, resistere, restitī, -
 reversi: reversi sunt = they returned; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from revertor, reverti, reversus
 reversionem: turning back, return; singular feminine accusative from reversiō, reversionis
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 scrūtātī: scrūtātī sunt = they searched thoroughly; past passive participle from scrutor, scrutari, scrutatus
 sed: but
 sine: without
 suā: her/its; singular feminine ablative from suus
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 tandem: finally
 turbis: troops; plural feminine ablative from turba, turbae
 ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 utrā: either; singular feminine ablative from uter, utra, utrum
 utrāque: either: singular feminine ablative from uterque, utraque, utrumque
 uxōrem: wife; singular feminine accusative from uxor, uxoris
 valuit: he was healthy, able, strong; 3rd person singular perfect active from valeo, valere, valui, valitus
 virtūtē: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine ablative from virtūs, virtūtis
 voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, volui, -
 voluntātem: will; singular feminine accusative from voluntās, voluntātis

46 Et Hengistus omnī familiae suae iussit, ut ūnusquisque artavum suum sub pede in mediō ficōnis suī pōneret: 'Et quandō clāmāverō ad vōs et dīxerō: "eu Saxonēs eniminit¹ saxās", cultellōs vestrōs ex ficōnibus vestrīs ēdūcite et in illōs irruite et fortiter contrā illōs resistite. Et rēgem illōrum nōlīte occīdere, sed eum, prō causā filiae meae, quam dedī illī in coniugium, tenente, quia melius² est nōbīs, ut ex manibus nostrīs redimātur.' Et conventum addūxērunt et in ūnum convēnērunt, et Saxonēs amīcālīter³ locūtī in mente interim vulpicīnō mōre agēbant et vir iuxtā virum sociālīter sēdērunt. Hengistus sīcut⁴ dīxerat, vōciferātus est et omnēs seniōrēs trecentī Guorthigirnī rēgis iugulātī sunt et ipse sōlus captus et catēnātus est et regiōnēs plūrimās prō redēptiōne animae suae illīs tribuit, id est Etsaxum, Sutsaxum.

¹*Hey, Saxons, get your knives. eniminit is not a Latin word and appears to be a transliteration of the Anglo-Saxon phrase Nemet oure saxas, which means get your knives.*

²*Because it is better for us, that he might be redeemed out of our hands. They held Vortigern hostage.*

³*The Saxons spoke amicably (in a friendly manner) meanwhile they acted according to a foxy (sly) custom in their mind, and man sat next to man sociably.*

⁴*Just as Hengist had said, he yelled and all 300 elders of King Vortigern were slain and he himself (Vortigern) was captured and chained and he assigned to them more regions, that is Essex and Sussex, for the redemption of his soul.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
addūxērunt: they lead to; 3rd person plural perfect active from addūcō, addūcere, addūxi, adductus
agēbant: they conducted; 3rd person plural imperfect active from agō, agere, ēgi, āctus
amīcus, amīci: friend; singular masculine nominative from amīcus, amīci
artavum: small knife; quill-sharpening knife; singular masculine accusative from artavus, artavi
captus: captus est = was seized; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from capiō, capere, cēpi, captus
catēnātus: catēnātus est = was chained; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from catēnō, catēnāre, catēnāvī catēnātus
causā: cause, reason; singular feminine ablative from causa, causae
clāmāverō: I will have shouted; 1st person singular future-perfect active from clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus
coniugium: marriage; singular neuter accusative from coniugium, coniugii
contrā: against, away from, facing
convēnērunt: they came together; 3rd person plural perfect active from conveniō, convenire, convēnī, conventus
conventum: meeting; singular feminine accusative from conventus, conventus
cultellōs: small knives; plural masculine accusative from cultellus, cultelli
dedī: I gave; 1st person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedī, datus
dixerat: he had said; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dixerō: I will have said; 1st person singular future-perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
ēdūcite: take out!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from educo, educere, eduxī, eductus
ēn: behold!
enim: for, truly, really, indeed
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
Estsaxum: Essex
et: and
eu: hey! (interjection)
eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
ex: out of, from
familiae: family; singular feminine active from familia, familiae
ficōnibus: shoes; this word wasn't in any dictionary I consulted; by context it must mean shoes.
ficōnis: shoe; this word wasn't in any dictionary I consulted; by context it must mean shoe. *Nennius Interpretātus* glosses this passage as *Sed Saxōnes habēbant secum cultrōs inter plantās et soleās*.
filiae: daughter; singular feminine genitive from filia, filiae
fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)
Guorthigirmi: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
Hengistus: Hengist, a Saxon warrior
id: it
illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
illōs: those; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
interim: during
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
irruite: rush! force your way in!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from irruō, irruere, irruī, irrutus
iugulātī: iugulātī sunt = were slaughtered; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from iugulō, iugulāre, iugulāvī, iugulātus
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubere, iussi, iussus
iuxtā: near, nearly
locūtī: having been spoken; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
manibus: hands; plural feminine ablative from manus, manūs
meae: my; singular feminine genitive from meus, mea, meum
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium
melius: better, comparative adverb from bonus
mente: mind; singular feminine ablative from mēns, mentis
mōre: manner, custom; singular masculine ablative from mōs, mōris
nōbīs: us; singular dative or ablative from ego
nōlite: be unwilling! imperative plural of nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (irr.)
nostrīs: our
occidere: to kill; present infinitive from occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus
omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,

omne
omnī: all, every; singular dative from omnis, omnis, omne
pede: foot; singular masculine ablative from pēs, pedis
plūrimās: very many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
pōneret: he put; 3rd person singular imperfect subjunctive from pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
quam: whom; singular feminine accusative from quī
quandō: when, because
quia: because
redēptiōne: redemption; singular feminine ablative from redēptiō, redēptiōnis
redimātur: is being bought back; 3rd person singular present passive subjunctive from redimō, redimere, redēmī, redēptus
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
resistite: fight!; 2nd person plural present active imperative from resistō, resistere, restitī, -
saxas: knives; see footnote 1
Saxonēs: The Saxons
sed: but
sēdērunt: they sat; 3rd person plural perfect active from sedeō, sedere, sedī, sessus
seniōrēs: elders; plural common accusative from senex, senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
sicut: as, same as, like
sociāliter: sociably; adverb from sociālis, sociāle
sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla, sōlum (gen -ius)
suae: his; singular feminine dative
sub: below, under
suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
Sutsaxum: Sussex
suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
tenente: holding; singular ablative present participle from teneō, tenere, tenuī, tentus
trecentī: three hundred; plural masculine nominative from trecentī -ae -a, trecentessimus -a -um, trecentī -ae -a, trecentie (n)s
tribuit: he assigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tributus
ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
ūnusquisque: each one
ut: so that
vestrīs: your; plural dative or ablative from vester
vestrōs: your; plural masculine accusative from vester
vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, virī
virum: man; singular masculine accusative from vir, virī
vōciferātus: vōciferātus est = he yelled; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from vōciferor, vōciferārī, vōciferātus
vōs: you;(pronoun)
vulpicinō: foxy; word derived from vulpis, vulpis

47 Sānctus vērō Germānus Guorthigirnō praedicābat, ut ad Dominum suum converteret et ab illicitā coniūctiōne¹ sē sēparāret; et ille usque ad regiōnem, quae ā nōmine suō accēpit nōmen Guorthigirniaun, miserābiliter effūgit, ut ibī cum uxōribus suīs latēret. Et sānctus Germānus post illum secūtus est cum omnī clērō Brittōnum et ibī quadrāgintā diēbus et quadrāgintā noctibus mānsit et super petram ōrābat et diē noctūque stābat. Et iterum Guorthigirnus usque ad arcem Guorthigirnī, quae est in regiōne Demetōrum iuxtā flūmen Teibī, ignōminiōsē abscessit. Et solitō mōre sānctus Germānus eum secūtus est et ibī ieiūnus cum omnī clērō tribus diēbus totidemque noctibus causāliter mānsit et in quārtā nocte arx tōta mediae² circā noctīs hōram per ignem missum dē caelō ex imprōvisō cecidit ārdente igne caelestī; et Guorthigirnus cum omnibus, quī cum eō erant, et cum uxōribus suīs dēfēcit. Hic est finis Guorthigirnī, ut in librō beātī Germānī repperī. Aliī³ autem aliter dīxērunt.

¹*That he might turn to his Lord (i.e. become a Christian) and from his illicit marriage separate himself. This refers to his marriage to his daughter, see section 39.*

²*On the fourth night the whole castle, around the hour of the middle of the night, through fire sent from heaven, out of the unexpected, fell, burning by the celestial fire. See section 34 for another account of Saint Germanus praying and fire falling from heaven.*

³*Other (books containing narratives about Vortigern) however said otherwise.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 abscessit: he fled, left; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 abscedō, abscedere, abscessi, abscessus
 accēpit: it received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 alii: others; plural masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 aliter: otherwise
 ardente: burning; singular ablative present participle from
 ardeō, ardere, arsi, arsus
 arcem: castle, citadel; singular feminine accusative from arx,
 arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 autem: but, however, moreover
 beāti: blessed; singular masculine genitive from beātus, beāta
 -um, beātiōr -or -us, beātissimus -a -um
 Brittonum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural
 masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
 caelesti: heavenly matters; singular ablative from caelestis,
 caeleste, caelestior -or -us, caelestissimus -a -um
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus,
 caeli
 cāusaliter: by way of cause, causally
 cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidi, cāsus
 circā: around, about, concerning
 clērō: clergy; singular masculine ablative from clērus, clēri
 coniūctiōne: conjunction, association; singular feminine
 ablative from conjunctio, conjunctionis
 converteret: he turned, changed; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from convertō, convertere, converti,
 conversus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 defecit: he died; 3rd person singular perfect from deficiō,
 deficere, defeci, defectus
 Demetōrum: of the Demetae; this is modern-day Dyfed in Wales
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dixerunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dicō,
 dicere, dixi, dictus
 Dominum: lord; singular masculine accusative from dominus,
 domini
 effūgit: he fled; 3rd person singular present active from effugio,
 effugere, effugi, effugitus
 eō: with him; 3rd person singular ablative from is, ea, id
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 ex: out of, from
 finis: end; singular common nominative from finis, finis
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 Germāni: of Saint Germanus
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Guorthigirni: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirniaun: a region named after Vortigern
 Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (nominative case)
 hic: this; singular masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōram: hour, time; singular feminine accusative from hōra,
 hōrae
 ibi: there, then
 ieiūnus: fasting; singular masculine nominative from ieiūnus,
 ieiūna -um, ieiūnior -or -us, ieiūnissimus -a -um
 igne: fire; singular masculine ablative from ignis, ignis
 ignem: fire; singular masculine accusative from ignis, ignis
 ignōminiōsē: disgracefully; adverb from ignōminiōsus,
 ignōminiōsa, ignōminiōsum
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illicitā: unallowed; singular feminine ablative from illicitus,
 illicita, illicitum
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 imprōvisō: unexpected; singular masculine ablative from
 imprōvisus, imprōvisa, imprōvisum
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 iterum: again
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 latēret: he lay hidden, lurked; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from lateō, latēre, latui, -
 librō: book; singular masculine ablative from liber, libri
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 mediae: middle; singular feminine genitive from medius, media,
 medium
 miserābiliter: miserably; adverb from misereō, miserēre,
 miserui, miseritus
 missum: sent; singular neuter nominative perfect passive
 participle from mittō, mittere, misi, missum
 mōre: manner, custom; singular masculine ablative from mōs,
 mōris
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 noctibus: nights; plural feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 noctis: nights; singular feminine genitive from nox, noctis
 noctū: at night
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orābat: he was praying; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from orō, orāre, orāvi, orātus
 per: through
 petram: stone, rock; singular feminine accusative from petra,
 petrae
 post: behind, after, since
 praedicābat: he was preaching; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvi, praedicātus
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quārtā: fourth; singular feminine ablative from quattuor,
 quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 repperi: I found; 1st person singular perfect from reperiō,
 reperire, repperi, repertus
 sāctus: holy, saint
 se: himself
 secūtus: secūtus + est = he followed
 sēparāret: he might separat; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvi,
 sēparātus
 solitō: accustomed; singular masculine ablative from solitus -a
 -um
 stābat: he was standing; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from stō, stāre, steti, status
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 super: above, on top of
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 Teibi: the River Teifi in Wales
 tōta: whole, total; singular feminine nominative from tōtus, tōta,
 tōtum (gen -ius)
 totidemque: and as many
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 uxōribus: wives; plural feminine ablative from uxor, uxōris
 vērō: truly, even so, still

48 Postquam exōsī¹ fuērunt illī omnēs hominēs gentis suae prō piāculō suō inter potentēs et impotentēs, inter servum et liberum, inter monachōs et lāicōs, inter parvum et magnum, et ipse dum dē locō ad locum vagus errat, tandem cor eius crepuit et dēfūctus est, nōn cum laude. Aliī dīxērunt: terra aperta est et dēglūtīvit eum in nocte, in quā combusta est arx circā eum, quia nōn inventae sunt ūllae reliquiae illōrum, quī combustī sunt cum eō in arce.

¹*Afterwards all the people of his race, from the powerful to the weak, from the slave to the free, from the monks to the laity, from the small to the large, had hated him because of his sin.* I've chosen to interpret *exōsī fuērunt* as a past passive participle construction of a deponent verb, with *illī* being in the dative because verbs related to sentiment often use the dative in place of the accusative. The alternative interpretation would be to take *illī* as plural nominative and *exōsī* as an adjective, in which case the whole people would be hated on account of his sin. Because previously the author talks about Saint Germanus and a council of all the Britons condemning Vortigern, I favor the first view.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliī: others; plural masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 aperta: aperta est = was opened; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from aperīo, aperīre, aperuī, apertus
 arce: castle, citadel; singular feminine ablative from arx, arcis
 arx: castle, citadel; singular feminine nominative from arx, arcis
 circā: around, about, concerning
 combusta: combusta est = was burned up; from combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus
 combusti: combusti sunt = they were burned up; from combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combustus
 cor: heart; singular neuter nominative from cor, cordis
 crepuit: it cracked; 3rd person singular perfect active from crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēfūctus: dēfūctus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from dēfungor, dēfungī, dēfūctus
 dēglutivit: it swallowed; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēglutiō, dēglutīre, dēglutivī, dēglutitus
 dīxērunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eius: his/her/its
 eō: I go; 1st person singular present active from eo, ire, ivi(ii), itus
 errat: he wanders, errs; 3rd person singular present active from errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 exōsī: exōsī fuerunt = they had hated; see footnote 1
 fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 illī: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud; see footnote 1
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 impotentēs: the weak, powerless; plural common accusative from impotēns, (gen.), impotentis
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 inventae: inventae sunt = they were found; plural feminine nominative perfect passive participle from inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 lāicōs: laity; plural masculine accusative from lāicus -a -um
 laude: praise; singular feminine ablative from laus, laudis
 liberum: free; singular masculine accusative from liber, liberi
 locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, loci
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, loci
 māgnum: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 monachōs: monks; plural masculine accusative from monachus, monachī
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 nōn: not
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 parvum: small; singular neuter accusative from parvus, parva -um, minor -or -us, minimus -a -um
 piāculō: sin; singular neuter ablative from piāculum, piāculi
 postquam: since, since then, after
 potentēs: mighty; plural common accusative from potēns, potentis (gen.), potentior -or -us, potentissimus -a -um
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 reliquiae: remains; plural feminine nominative from reliquia, reliquiae
 servum: slave, servant; singular masculine accusative from servus, servi
 suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine nom. or voc. from suus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 tandem: finally
 terra: land; singular feminine nominative from terra, terrae
 ūllae: any; plural feminine nominative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen -ius)
 vagus: vagrant; singular masculine nominative from vagus, vagī

Trēs filiōs habuit, quōrum nōmina sunt Guorthemir, quī pugnābat contrā barbarōs, ut suprà dīximus; secundō Categirn; tertius Pāscēt, quī rēgnāvit in duābus regiōnibus Buelt et Guorthegirniaun post mortem patris suī largiente¹ Ambrosiō illī, quī fuit rēx inter omnēs rēgēs Brittannicae gentis. Quārtus fuit Faustus, quī ā filiā suā genitus est illī, et sāctus Germānus baptizāvit illum et nūtrivit et docuit et condidit locum magnum super rīpam flūminis, quod vocātur Rēnis, et manet usque hodiē. Et ūnam filiam habuit, quae fuit māter Faustī sāctī.

¹*Having been granted by Ambrosius to him.* This is an ablative absolute.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 Ambrosiō: Ambrosius (ablative case)
 baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
 barbarōs: barbarians; plural masculine accusative from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 Britannicae: of the Brittonic (genitive case)
 Buelt: Buellt, a region in Wales
 Categirn: Categirn, son of Vortigern
 condidit: he founded, he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 diximus: we said; 1st person plural perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 docuit: he taught; 3rd person singular perfect active from doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus
 duābus: two; plural feminine ablative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, binī -ae -a, bis
 et: and
 Fausti: of Faustus
 Faustus: Faustus, a king who was grandfather of a saint.
 filiā: daughter; singular feminine ablative from filia, filiae
 filiam: daughter; singular feminine accusative from filia, filiae
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 genitus: genitus est = he was born; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from genō, genere, genuī, genitus
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 Guorthegirniaun: a region in Wales
 Guorthemir: Vortimer, son of Vortigern
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habeo, habēre, habuī, habitus
 hodiē: today
 illi: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inter: between, among, during
 largiente: having granted; ablative participle from largior, largiri, largitus
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, loci
 māgnū: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus, magna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 manet: he remains; 3rd person singular present active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 māter: mother; singular feminine nominative from māter, mātris
 mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nūtrivit: he nourished; 3rd person singular perfect active from nūtriō, nūtrire, nūtrivī, nūtritus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 Pāscēt: Pāscēt, a son of Vortigern
 patris: father; singular masculine genitive from pater, patris
 post: behind, after, since
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quārtus: fourth
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 Rēnis: possibly the River Rhaeadr in Powys, Wales
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 ripam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from ripa, ripae
 sanctī: holy
 sanctus: holy, saint
 secundō: second
 suā: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from suus
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 super: above, on top of
 suprā: over, above, beyond, before
 tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

49 Haec est geneālogia illius, quae ad initium retrō recurrit.

Fernmail ipse est, quī regit modo in regiōnibus duābus Buelte et Guorthigirniaun, filius Teudubir. Teudubir ipse est rēx Bueltiae regiōnis, filius Pāscēt, filiū Guoidcant, filiū Moriud, filiū Eldat, filiū Eldoc, filiū Paul, filiū Mepurit, filiū Briacat, filiū Pāscēt, filiū Guorthigirn Guortheneu, filiū Guitaul, filiū Guitolin, filiū Glōvī. Bonus, Paul, Maurōn trēs frātrēs fuērunt filiū Glōvī, quī aedificāvit urbem magnam super rīpam flūminis Sabrīnae, quae vocātur Brittannīcō sermōne Cair Glōvī, Saxonice autem Gloecestre. Satis dictum est dē Guorthigirnō et dē genere suō.

50 Sāctus Germānus reversus est post mortem illius ad patriam suam.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
aedificāvit: he built; 3rd person singular perfect active from
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus
autem: but, however, moreover
Bonus: a son of Glovus
Briacat: an ancestor of Fernmail
Brittannicō: Britannic (ablative case)
Buelit: Buelit, a region in Wales
Buelitiae: of Buelit, a region in Wales
Cair: city (a Welsh word)
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dictum: dictum est = has been said; perfect passive participle
from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
duābus: two; plural feminine ablative from duo -ae o, secundus
-a -um, binī -ae -a, bis
Eldat: an ancestor of Fernmail
Eldoc: an ancestor of Fernmail
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
fuī, futūrus
et: and
Fernmail: king of two regions of Wales
filiī: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
frātrēs: brothers; plural masculine nominative from frāter,
frātris
fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum,
esse, fuī, futūrus
geneālogia: genealogy; singular feminine nominative from
geneālogia, geneālogiae
genere: offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
Germanus: Saint Germanus
Glocester: Gloucester, a city near Wales
Glovi: an ancestor of Fernmail
Guitaul: an ancestor of Fernmail
Guitolin: an ancestor of Fernmail
Guoidcant: an ancestor of Fernmail
Guortheneu: Guorthigirn Guortheneu, an ancestor of Fernmail
Guorthigirn: Guorthigirn Guortheneu, an ancestor of Fernmail
Guorthigirniaun: a region in Wales
Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
haec: this, these; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter
nom. or acc. of hic, haec, hoc
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
initium: beginning; singular neuter accusative from initium,
initii
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
ipsum
māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus,
māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
Mauron: a son of Glovus
Mepurit: an ancestor of Fernmail
modo: now, presently
mortem: death; singular feminine accusative from mors, mortis
Moriud: an ancestor of Fernmail
Pāscant: an ancestor of Fernmail
patriam: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
patriae
Paul: an ancestor of Fernmail, or a son of Glovus
post: behind, after, since
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
recurrat: it returns; 3rd person singular perfect from recurrō,
recurrere, recurri, recursus
regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō,
regiōnis
regiōnis: region; singular feminine genitive from regiō, regiōnis
regit: he rules; 3rd person singular present active from regō,
regere, rēxi, rēctus
retrō: behind, backwards
reversus: reversus + est = he returned
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
rīpam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from rīpa,
rīpae
Sabrinae: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain.
Sabrinae is probably in the nominative case here.
Saxonice: in Anglo-Saxon
sāctus: holy, saint
satis: enough
sermōne: conversation, speech; singular masculine ablative
from sermō, sermōnis
suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus
suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
super: above, on top of
trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
-a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
Teudubir: an ancestor of Fernmail
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis

III. Vīta Patriciī

Sānctus Patricius erat in illō tempore captīvus apud Scottōs et dominus illius nōminābātur Milchu et porcārius cum illō erat et in septimō decimō annō aetātis suae reversus est dē captivitātē et nūtū¹ deī ērudītus est postea in sacrīs litterīs et ad Rōmam usque pervēnit et per longum spatium mānsit ibīdem. Ad lēgandum² et ad scrūtanda mystēria deī et sānctārum scrīptūrārum librōs percurrit. Nam cum ibī īsset per annōs septem, missus est Palladius epīscopus prīmitus ā Caelestīnō epīscopō et Pāpā Rōmae ad Scottōs in Chrīstum convertendōs; sed prohibuit illum Deus per quāsdam tempestātēs, quia nēmō³ potest accipere quicquam dē terrā, nisi dē caelō datum fuerit illi dēsuper. Et profectus est ille Palladius dē Hiberniā et pervēnit ad Brittanniam et ibī dēfūctus est in terrā Pictōrum.

¹*By the will of God was educated afterwards in sacred literature.*

²*For reading and for studying thoroughly the mysteries of God and of the Holy Scriptures he ran to the books.*

³*Because no one can receive anything from the earth, unless it has been given to him from heaven above. This is similar to John 3:27 in the Vulgate: nōn potest homō accipere quicquam nisi fuerit ei datum dē caelō.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 accipere: to receive; present infinitive from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aetātis: of age; singular feminine genitive from aetās, aetātis
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 apud: at, by, near
 Brittanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 caelestinō: heavenly; singular masculine ablative from caeleste, caelestis
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus, caeli
 captivitate: captivity; singular feminine ablative from captivitas, captivitatis
 captivus: captive; singular masculine nominative from captivus, captiva, captivum
 Christum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Christus, Christi
 convertendōs: for converting; plural masculine accusative
 gerund from convertō, convertere, converti, conversus
 cum: with
 quāsdam: a certain; plural feminine accusative from quidam
 datum: datum fuerit = had been given; from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decimō: tenth
 defūctus: defūctus est = he died; from defungor, defungī, defūctus
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 desuper: above
 Deus: god; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei
 Dominus: lord, master; singular masculine nominative from dominus, domini
 episcopō: overseer, bishop; singular masculine ablative from episcopus, episcopi
 episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative from episcopus, episcopi
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 ēruditus: ēruditus est = he was educated; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from ērudiō, ērudire, ērudivī, ēruditus
 et: and
 Hiberniā: Ireland; singular feminine ablative from Hibernia, Hiberniae
 ibi: there, then
 ibidem: in the same place
 III: 3 as a Roman numeral
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illō: these; singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 isset: he had gone; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from eō, ire, iī, itus
 lēgandum: reading; gerund from lēgō, lēgāre, lēgāvī, lēgātus
 librōs: books; plural masculine accusative from liber, librī
 litteris: literature; plural feminine ablative from littera, litterae
 longum: long; singular neuter accusative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 Milchu: the man who owned Saint Patrick
 missus: missus est = he was sent; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus
 mystēria: mysteries; plural neuter accusative from mystērīum, mystērīi
 nam: yes, truly
 nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōminābātur: he was named, called; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus
 nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from nūtus, nūtus
 Palladius: Palladius: a bishop sent to convert the Scots
 Pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Papa, Papae
 Patriciū: of Saint Patrick
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 per: through
 percurrit: he ran through; 3rd person singular present active from percurro, percurrere, percurri, percursus
 pervenit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 porcarius: swineherd; singular masculine nominative from porcarius, porcariī
 postea: thereafter, later
 potest: he can; 3rd person singular present active from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prīmitus: Primate (a rank of bishop), in the beginning, originally
 profectus: profectus sum = I set out; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from proficiscor, proficisci, profectus
 prohibuit: he prevented, he restrained; 3rd person singular perfect active from prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus
 quāsdam: certain one; plural feminine accusative from quīdam
 quia: because
 quicquam: anyone; singular neuter nominative or accusative from quisquam
 reversus: reversus + est = he returned
 Rōmae: Rome; singular feminine genitive from Rōma, Rōmae
 Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
 sacrīs: sacred; plural ablative from sacer, sacra, sacrum
 sāctārum: holy; plural feminine genitive from sāctus -a -um
 sāctus: holy, saint
 Scottōs: Scots
 scrīptūrārum: of scriptures; plural feminine genitive from scrīptūra, scrīptūrae
 scrūtanda: searching thoroughly, investigating; singular feminine nominative future passive participle from scrūto, scrūtāre, scrūtāvī, scrūtātus
 sed: but
 septem: seven
 septimō: seventh
 spatium: space; singular neuter accusative from spatium, spatīi
 suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine nom. or voc. from suus
 tempestātēs: storms; plural feminine accusative from tempestās, tempestātis
 tempore: time; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 terrā: land; singular feminine ablative from terra, terrae
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vīta: life; singular feminine nominative from vīta, vītae

51 Audītā¹ morte Paladii episcopi alius lēgātus Patricius Theodosiō et Valentiānō
rēgnantibus ā Caelestīnō pāpa Rōmānō et angelō Deī, cui nōmen erat Victor, monente
et suādente sāctō Germānō episcopō ad Scottōs in fidem Chrīstī convertendōs
mittitur. Mīsit Germānus seniōrem cum illō Segerum² ad quendam hominem
mīrābilem summum episcopum Amatheam rēgem in propinquō habitantem. Ibī
sāctus sciēns omnia, quae ventūra essent illī, episcopālem, gradum Amathēō rēge
episcopus sāctus accēpit et nōmen quod est Patricius sūmpsit, quia prius Maun
vocābātur. Auxilius et Isērīnus et cēterī īferiōrī gradū simul ōrdinātī sunt cum eō.

¹Having heard of the death of the bishop Paladius, another legate, Patrick, while Theodosius and Valentianus were reigning (over the Roman empire), was sent by Celestine the Roman Pope and by an angel of God, whose name was Victor, by the urging and persuading of the bishop Saint Germanus, to be sent for converting the Scots to Christ.

²(Saint) Germanus sent with him the elder Segerus to a certain marvelous man, the archbishop king Amatheas in the neighboring land. There, the holy man knowing everything, which was to come to him, the holy bishop received the rank (of bishop) from Amatheus and took up the name which is Patrick, because before he was called Maun. Segerus appears to be a companion of Patrick, but is not mentioned again.

³Auxilius and Isērīnus and others were ordained to lower ranks (in the church hierarchy) with him.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 accēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 alius: other; singular masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 angelō: angel, messenger; singular masculine ablative from angelus, angelī
 Amatheam: Amatheus, the archbishop and king who ordained Patrick
 Amathēō: Amatheus, the archbishop and king who ordained Patrick
 audītā: having been heard; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from audio, audire, audiui, auditus
 Auxilius: a man who went with Saint Patrick
 Caelestinō: Pope Celestine I (papacy 422-432)
 cēteri: others; plural masculine nominative from cēterus, cētera, cēterum
 Christi: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christī
 convertendōs: converting; plural masculine accusative gerund from convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 quendam: a certain; singular masculine accusative from quidam
 Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 eo: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 episcopālem: episcopal, of a bishop; singular common accusative from episcopālis, episcopālis, episcopāle
 episcopi: overseer, bishop; singular masculine genitive from episcopus, episcopi
 episcopō: overseer, bishop; singular masculine ablative from episcopus, episcopi
 episcopum: overseer, bishop; singular masculine accusative from episcopus, episcopi
 episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative from episcopus, episcopi
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fideī
 Germanō: Saint Germanus (ablative case)
 Germanus: Saint Germanus
 gradū: rank, grade; singular masculine ablative from gradus, gradūs
 gradum: rank, grade; singular masculine accusative from gradus, gradūs
 habitantem: living, inhabiting; singular common accusative present participle from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 hominem: person; singular masculine accusative from homō, hominis
 ibi: there, then
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illō: that; singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inferiōri: lower, inferior; singular masculine ablative from inferus -a -um
 Iserinus: a man who went with Saint Patrick
 lēgātus: legate, ambassador; singular masculine nominative from lēgātus, lēgātī
 Maun: previous name of Saint Patrick
 mīrābilem: marvelous, wonderful; singular common accusative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile
 mīsīt: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittere, mīsī, missus
 mittitur: he is being sent; 3rd person singular present passive from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
 monente: urging; singular ablative present participle from moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus
 morte: death; singular feminine ablative from mors, mortis
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 omnia: all, every; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 ordinātī: ordinātī sunt = they were ordained; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from ordinō, ordināre, ordināvī, ordinātus
 Paladii: of Palladius
 Pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Papa, Papae
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 prius: before
 propinquō: near, neighboring; singular masculine ablative from propinquus, propinqua, propinquum
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quia: because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgnantibus: reigning; plural ablative present participle from rēgnō, rēgnare, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 Rōmānō: Roman; singular masculine ablative from Rōmānūs, -a -um
 sāctō: holy
 sāctus: holy, saint
 sciēs: knowing; singular nominative present participle from sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus
 Scottōs: the Scots
 Segerum: Segerus, a companion to Saint Patrick
 seniōrem: elder, older; singular common accusative from senex, senis (gen.), senior -or -us, -
 simul: at the same time as
 suādente: persuading; singular ablative present participle from suādeō, suādēre, suāsi, suāsus
 summum: highest, greatest; plural feminine genitive from summa, summae
 sūmpsīt: he took up; 3rd person singular perfect active from sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus
 Theodosiō: Theodosius; (Emperor Theodosius 379-395); singular masculine ablative from Theodosius, Theodosii
 Valentiānō: Valens; (Emperor Flavius Julius Valens 364-378 lost at Adrianople); singular masculine ablative from Valens, Valentis
 ventūra: coming (in the future); plural neuter nominative future participle from
 Victor: the name of an angel; singular masculine nominative from victor, victōris
 vocābātur: he was called, summoned; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

52 Tunc acceptīs benedictiōnibus perfectisque¹ omnibus in nōmine Sāctae Trīnitātis parātam ascendit nāvim et pervēnit ad Britanniam et praedicāvit ibī nōn multīs diēbus et āmissīs² omnibus ambulandī ānfrāctibus summā vėlōcitāte flātūque prōsperō mare Hibernicum cum nāvī dēscendit. Onerāta vērō nāvis cum trānsmarīnīs mīrābilibus³ et spīritālibus thēsaurīs perrēxit ad Hiberniam et baptizāvit eōs.

53 Ā mundi prīncipiō usque ad baptismum Hibernēnsium 5330 annī sunt. In quīntō annō Loygāre rēgis exōrsus est praedicāre fidem Chrīstī.

¹*Then having accepted benedictions and having finished everything that was prepared in the name of the Holy Trinity.*

²*And having left all the winding paths of walking, and with great speed and a prosperous wind he came down with the ship to the Irish sea. It's unclear what the winding paths of walking means.*

³*With overseas marvels and spiritual treasures. No further detail on what these are is given.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 acceptis: having been received; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 ambulandi: walking; singular masculine genitive gerund from
 ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus
 āmissis: having been left; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from amitto, amittere, āmiſi, āmissus
 ānfractibus: bends, curves, turnings; plural masculine ablative
 from ānfractus, ānfractus
 annī: years; plural masculine nominative from annus, annī
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 ascendit: he ascended; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsus
 baptismum: baptism; singular masculine accusative from
 baptismus, baptismī
 baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
 benedictionibus: benedictions, blessing; plural feminine ablative
 from benedictiō, benedictiōnis
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Chrīstus,
 Chrīstī
 cum: with
 dēscendit: he descended, went down; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī,
 dēscēsus
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 et: and
 exōrsus: exōrsus est = he began; singular masculine nominative
 perfect participle from exōrdior, exōrdiī, exōrsus
 fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fidēi
 flātū: blowing (wind); singular neuter ablative from flō, flāre,
 flāvī, flātus
 Hibernensium: of the Irish
 Hiberniam: Ireland; singular feminine accusative from Hibernia,
 Hiberniae
 Hibernicum: Irish
 ibī: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 Loygare: King Lóegaire mac Néill of Ireland (ablative)
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 mirābilibus: miracles; plural ablative from mirābilis, mirābilis,
 mirābile
 multis: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -,
 plūrimus -a -um
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nāvi: boat; singular feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis
 nāvim: boat; singular feminine accusative from nāvis, nāvis
 nāvis: boat; singular feminine nominative from nāvis, nāvis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 onerāta: having been burdened; plural neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from onerō, onerāre, onerāvī,
 onerātus
 parātam: having been prepared; singular feminine accusative
 perfect passive participle from parō, parāre, parāvī,
 parātus
 perfectis: having been accomplished; plural ablative perfect
 passive participle from perficiō, perficere, perfēcī,
 perfectus
 perrēxit: he proceeded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 pervenio, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 praedicāre: to preach; present infinitive from praedicō,
 praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus
 praedicāvit: he preached; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus
 prīncipiō: beginning, origin; singular neuter ablative from
 principium, principii
 prosperō: favorable, prosperous; singular masculine ablative
 from prosperus, prospera -um, prosperior -or -us,
 prosperrimus -a -um
 quintō: fifth
 régis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, régis
 sanctae: holy
 spīritālibus: spiritual; plural ablative from spīritālis, spīritālis,
 spīritāle
 summā: highest, greatest; singular feminine ablative from
 summa, summae
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 thēsauris: treasures; plural masculine ablative from thēsaurus,
 thēsaurī
 trānsmarīnis: overseas; plural ablative from trānsmarīnus,
 trānsmarīna, trānsmarīnum

Trīnitātis: Trinity; singular feminine genitive from Trinitas,
 Trinitatis
 tunc: then
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vėlōcitāte: speed; singular feminine ablative from vėlōcitās,
 vėlōcitātis
 vērō: truly, even so, still

54 Sānctus itaque Patricius ēvangelium Chrīstī externīs nātiōnibus per annōs quadrāgintā praedicābat, virtūtēs apostolicās faciēbat, caecōs illūminābat, leprōsōs mundābat, surdōs audīre faciēbat, daemonēs obsessīs corporibus fugiēbat, mortuōs numerō usque¹ ad novem suscitāvit, captīvōs multōs utriusque sexūs suīs propriīs dōnīs redēmit. Scrīpsit abegetōria² trecenta sexāgintā quīnque aut eō amplius. Ecclēsiās quoque eōdem numerō fundāvit trecentās sexāgintā quīnque aut eō amplius, in quibus Spīritus Deī erat. Presbytērōs autem usque ad tria mīlia ōrdināvit et duodecim mīlia hominum in ūnā regiōne Conachtā ad fidem Chrīstī convertit et baptizāvit et septem rēgēs, quī erant filii Amolgith, in ūnō diē baptizāvit. Quadrāgintā diēbus et quadrāgintā noctibus in cacūmine collis Eīle ieiūnāvit, id est Cruachan Eile; in quō colle in aere imminente³ trēs petitiōnēs prō hīs, quī fidem ex Hibernēnsibus recēpērunt, clēmenter postulāvit.

¹*He raised a number, up to nine, of the dead.*

²*He wrote 365 or more primers. abegetōria is likely a variant spelling from abecedārium, which, strictly speaking, is a book teaching the alphabet. Here the meaning is more likely a primer on the Christian faith.*

³*On which hill he gently requested, sending three petitions into the air for these, those of the Irish who received the faith. See next page for the contents of the three petitions.*

abegetoria: possibly 'primer books', perhaps a corruption of
 abecedarium, abecedariū
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aere: in the air; singular masculine ablative from aēr, aēris
 Amolgith: father of seven kings
 amplius: more; singular neuter nominative from amplus, ampla
 -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 apostolicās: apostolic; plural feminine accusative from
 apostolicus, apostolica, apostolicum
 audire: to hear; present infinitive from audio, audire, audivi,
 auditus
 aut: or
 autem: but, however, moreover
 baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
 cacūmine: peak, extremity; singular neuter ablative from
 cacūmen, cacūminis
 caecōs: blind; plural masculine accusative from caecus, caeca
 -um, caecior -or -us, caecissimus -a -um
 captīvōs: captives; plural masculine accusative from captivus,
 captiva, captivum
 Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus,
 Christi
 clementer: gently, leniently; adverb from clēmēns
 colle: hill; singular masculine ablative from collis, collis
 collis: of the hill; singular masculine genitive from collis, collis
 Conachta: Connacht, a province of Ireland
 convertit: he turned; 3rd person singular present active from
 convertō, convertere, converti, conversus
 corporibus: bodies; plural neuter ablative from corpus, corporis
 Cruachan: Cruachan Eile, Croghan Hill
 daemōnēs: demons; plural masculine accusative from daemōn,
 daemōnis
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dōnīs: gifts; plural neuter ablative from dōnum, dōni
 duodecim: two
 ecclēsiās: churches; plural feminine accusative from ecclēsia,
 ecclēsiae
 Eīle: Croghan Hill
 eō: from it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 eōdem: the same; (pronoun)
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvangelium: gospel; singular neuter nominative from
 Evangelium, Evangelii
 ex: out of, from
 externīs: foreign; plural ablative from externus, externa,
 externum
 faciēbat: he was performing, doing; 3rd person singular
 imperfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fideī
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fugiēbat: he cast out (based on context), he shunned; 3rd
 person singular imperfect active from fugiō, fugere, fūgī,
 fugitus
 fundāvit: he founded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 fundō, fundāre, fundāvī, fundātus
 Hibernēnsibus: Irishmen (plural ablative)
 hīs: for these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 hominum: of men; plural masculine genitive from homō, hominis
 id: it
 iēiūnāvit: he fasted; 3rd person singular perfect from iēiūnō,
 iēiūnāre
 illūminābat: he gave sight (literally brightened); 3rd person
 singular imperfect from illūminō, illūmināre, illūmināvī,
 illūminātus
 imminente: sending; ablative participle from imminēre
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 itaque: so then, therefore
 leprōsōs: lepers; plural common accusative from leprōsus,
 leprōsī
 mīlia: one thousand
 mortuōs: dead; plural masculine accusative from mortuus,
 mortuī
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 mundābat: he was cleansing; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active from mundō, mundāre, mundāvī, mundātus
 nātiōnibus: race, tribe, nation; plural feminine ablative from
 nātiō, nātiōnis
 noctibus: nights; plural feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 numerō: number; singular masculine ablative from numerus,
 numeri
 obsessis: having been besieged; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus
 ordināvit: he ordained, set in order; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from ordinō, ordināre, ordināvī, ordinātus
 Patricius: Saint Patrick
 per: through
 petitiōnēs: petitions; plural feminine nominative or accusative
 from petitiō, petitiōnis
 postulāvit: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus
 praedicābat: he preached; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātus
 presbyterōs: elders, presbyters; plural masculine accusative
 from presbyter, presbyterī
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 propriīs: own, personal, individual; plural ablative from
 proprius, propria, proprium
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
 quinque: five
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 recēpērunt: they received, they kept back; 3rd person plural
 perfect active from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
 redēmit: he bought back, redeemed; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from redimō, redimere, redēmī, redēptus
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, rēgis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 sānctus: holy, saint
 scrīpsit: he wrote
 septem: seven
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sexūs: sex (male or female); singular masculine genitive from
 sexus, sexūs
 spīritus: spirit, breath; singular masculine nominative from
 spīritus, spīritūs
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 surdōs: mute, silent; plural masculine accusative from surdus,
 surda, surdum
 suscitāvit: he stirred up, he awakened; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from suscitō, suscitāre, suscitāvī, suscitātus
 trecenta: 300
 trecentās: 300
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius
 -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tria: three
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
 -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus
 -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 utrius: either; singular genitive from uter, utra, utrum
 virtūtēs: virtue, manliness, power; plural feminine nominative
 from virtūs, virtūtis

Prīma petītiō eius est, ut dīcunt Scottī, ut susciperet ūnusquisque paenitentiam, licet¹ in extrēmō vītae suae statū: secunda, ut nē ā barbarīs cōnsūmentur in aeternum: tertia, ut nōn supervīxerit² aliquis Hibernensium in adventū iūdicīi, quia dēlēbuntur prō honōre Patriciī septem annīs ante iūdicium. In illō autem tumultō benedīxit populīs Hiberniae et ideō ascendit, ut ōrāret prō eīs et vidēret frūctum labōris suī. Et vērunt ad eum avēs multī colōris innumerābilēs, ut benediceret illīs, quod significat omnēs sānctōs utriusque sexūs Hibernensium pervenīre ad eum in diē iūdicīi ad patrem et ad magistrum suum, ut sequantur illum ad iūdicium. Postea in senectūte bonā migrāvit, ubi nunc laetātur in saecula saeculōrum. Āmēn.

¹*Even if at the end of his life.*

²*That no one of Ireland will live into the Day of Judgement, because they will be removed, for the honor of Patrick, seven years before judgement.* The gloss I've given here is less literal; presumably Patrick wasn't simply calling for the Irish to die but rather that they would avoid some form of judgement. Perhaps this is similar to the idea of the rapture within dispensational premillennialism.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adventū: arrival, approach; singular neuter ablative from
 advenio, advenire, adveni, adventus
 aeternum: eternal; singular neuter nominative from aeternus,
 aeterna -um, aeternior -or -us, aeternissimus -a -um
 aliquis: someone
 amen: amen, truly, verily
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 ascendit: he ascended; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascensus
 autem: but, however, moreover
 avēs: birds; plural feminine nominative from avis, avis
 barbaris: barbarous; plural ablative from barbarus, barbara
 -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
 benediceret: he might bless; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from benedicō, benedicere, benedixī,
 benedictus
 benedixit: he blessed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 benedicō, benedicere, benedixī, benedictus
 bonā: good; plural neuter ablative from bonum, boni
 colōris: color; singular masculine genitive from color, colōris
 cōsumentur: they will be consumed; 3rd person plural future
 passive from cōsumō, cōsumere, cōsumpsī, cōsumptus
 dēlēbuntur: they will be removed; 3rd person plural future
 passive from dēleo, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus
 dīcunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from dīcō,
 dicere, dixī, dictus
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēī
 eis: to them; plural ablative from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 extrēmō: limit, outside, end; singular masculine ablative from
 extremus, extremi
 frūctum: fruit; singular neuter nominative perfect participle
 from fructus, fructūs
 Hibernensium: of the Irish
 Hiberniae: of Ireland (genitive case)
 honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris
 ideō: for that reason
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa,
 illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 innumerābilēs: countless; plural common nominative from
 innumerābilis, innumerābilis, innumerābile
 iūdicīi: judgement; singular neuter genitive from iūdicium,
 iūdicīi
 iūdicium: judgement; singular neuter accusative from iūdicium,
 iūdicīi
 labōris: labor; singular masculine genitive from labor, labōris
 laetātur: he is glad; 3rd person singular present from laetor,
 laetārī, laetātus
 licet: even if, although
 magistrum: teacher; singular masculine accusative from
 magister, magistri
 migrāvit: he departed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 migrō, migrāre, migrāvī, migrātus
 multī: many; singular masculine genitive from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nē: not
 nōn: not
 nunc: now
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis,
 omnis, omne
 ōrāret: he prayed; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus
 paenitentiam: penitence, repentance; singular feminine
 accusative from paenitentia, paenitentiae
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 Patricīi: of Saint Patrick
 pervenire: to come to, to arrive; present infinitive from
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
 petitiō: petition; singular feminine nominative from petitiō,
 petitiōnis
 populis: people, populace; plural masculine dative from populus,
 populi
 postea: thereafter, later
 prīma: first; singular feminine nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 primum
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quia: because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 saecula: ages, generations; plural neuter accusative from
 saeculum, saeculi
 saeculōrum: of ages, generations; plural neuter genitive from
 saeculum, saeculi
 sāctōs: holy
 Scottī: the Scots
 secunda: second; singular feminine nominative from duo -ae o,
 secundus -a -um, bīnī -ae -a, bis
 senectūte: old age; singular feminine ablative from senectūs,
 senectūtis
 septem: seven
 sequantur: they follow; 3rd person plural present subjunctive
 from sequor, sequi, sēcūtus
 sexūs: sex (male or female); singular masculine genitive from
 sexus, sexūs
 significat: it signifies; 3rd person singular present active from
 significō, significāre, significāvī, significātus
 statū: state, status; singular neuter ablative from stō, stāre,
 steti, status
 suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine
 nom. or voc. from suus
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 supervixerit: he will have survived; 3rd person singular perfect
 active subjunctive from supervivo, supervivere, supervixi, -
 susciperet: he undertook; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 tertia: third; singular feminine nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tumulō: mound, hill; singular masculine ablative from tumulus,
 tumuli
 ubi: where
 unusquisque: each one
 ut: so that
 utrius: either; singular genitive from uter, utra, utrum
 vērunt: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 vidēret: he saw; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from videō, vidēre, vīdi, vīsus
 vītae: life; singular feminine genitive from vīta, vītae

55 Quattuor modīs aequantur¹ Moysēs et Patricius: id est angelō colloquente in rubō igneō: secundō modō in monte quadrāgintā diēbus et quadrāgintā noctibus ieiūnāvit: tertiō modō similēs fuērunt aetāte 120 annīs: quārtō modō sepulchrum illius nēmō scit, sed in occultō humātus² est nēmine sciente. Quīndecim annīs in captīvitāte, in vīcēsīmō quīntō annō ab Amathēō sānctō epīscopō subrogātur, octōgintā et quīnque annīs in Hiberniā praedicāvit³. Rēs autem exigēbat⁴ amplius loquī dē Sānctō Patriciō, sed tamen prō compendiō sermōnis voluī breviāre.

¹*In four ways Moses and Patrick are compared.*

²*But in secret they were buried (with) no one knowing.*

³Some of these times overlap; assuming the 85 years in Ireland went right up until his death, he started preaching in Ireland when he was $120-85=35$ years old.

⁴*The thing (that is, the account of the life of Saint Patrick) demanded to speak more of Saint Patrick.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
aequantur: they are compared; 3rd person plural present passive from aequō, aequāre, aequāvi, aequātus
aetāte: lifetime, age; singular feminine ablative from aetās, aetātis
amplius: ampler, larger; singular neuter accusative from amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
angelō: angel; singular masculine ablative from angelus, angelī
annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
Amathēō: Amatheus, the archbishop and king who ordained Saint Patrick to the bishopric
autem: but, however, moreover
breviāre: to shorten, abbreviate; present infinitive from breviō, breviāre, breviāvi, breviātus
captivitate: captivity; singular feminine ablative from captivitas, captivitātis
colloquente: discussing; singular ablative present participle from colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum
compendiō: shortening, abbreviating; singular neuter ablative from compendium, compendii
dē: of, from, away from, down from
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
episcopō: overseer, bishop; singular masculine ablative from episcopus, episcopi
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
et: and
exigēbat: it was demanding; 3rd person singular imperfect active from exigō, exigere, exēgi, exāctus
fuērunt: they were; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
Hiberniā: Ireland; singular feminine ablative from Hibernia, Hiberniae
humātus: humātus est = he was buried; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from humō, humāre, humāvi, humātus
id: it
iēiunāvit: he fasted; 3rd person singular perfect from iēiunō, iēiunāre
igneō: fiery; singular masculine ablative from igneus, ignea, igneum
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
loquī: to speak, to say; present infinitive from loquor, loquī, locūtus
modis: ways; plural masculine ablative from modus, modī
modō: way; singular masculine ablative from modus, modi
monte: mountain; singular masculine ablative from mōns, montis
Moyses: Moses; singular masculine nominative from Moyses, Moysis
nēmine: no one; singular common ablative from nēmō, nēminis
nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
noctibus: nights; plural feminine ablative from nox, noctis
occultō: secrecy; singular neuter ablative from occultum, occultī
octōgintā: 80; from octōginta, octōgēsimus -a -um, octōgēni -ae -a, octōgiē (n)s
Patriciō: of Saint Patrick
Patricius: Saint Patrick
praedicāvit: he preached; 3rd person singular perfect active from praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvi, praedicātus
prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
quadrāgintā: 40
quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor, quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
quattuor: 4
quīndecim: fifteen; from quīndecim, quīndecimus -a -um, quīndeci -ae -a, quīndecie (n)s
quinque: five
quīntō: fifth
rēs: thing; singular feminine nominative from rēs, rei
rubō: thornbush; singular masculine ablative from rubus, rubī
sāctō: holy
sciente: knowing; singular ablative present participle from sciō, scīre, scīvi, scītus
scit: he knows; 3rd person singular present from sciō, scīre, scīvi, scītum
secundō: second
sed: but
sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter accusative from sepulchrum, sepulchrī
sermōnis: conversation, speech; plural masculine genitive from sermō, sermōnis
similēs: similar; plural masculine nominative from similis, simile
subrogātur: he is elected; 3rd person singular present passive from subrogō, subrogāre, subrogāvi, subrogātus
tamen: however
tertiō: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia,

tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
vīcēsīmō: twentieth; singular masculine ablative from viginti, vicesimus -a -um, vīceni -ae -a, vīcie (n)s
volui: I wanted; 1st person singular perfect active from volō, velle, volui, -

IV. Arthuriāna

56 In illō tempore Saxonēs invalēscēbant in multitūdine et crēscēbant in Brittanniā. Mortuō autem Hengistō Octha filius eius trānsīvit dē sinistrālī parte Britanniae ad rēgnum Cantōrum et dē ipsō ortī sunt rēgēs Cantōrum. Tunc Arthur pugnābat contrā illōs in illīs diēbus cum rēgibus Brittōnum, sed ipse erat dux¹ bellōrum. Primum bellum fuit in ōstium flūminis quod dīcitur Glein. Secundum et tertium et quārtum et quīntum super aliud flūmen, quod dīcitur Dubglās et est in regiōne Linnuis. Sextum bellum super flūmen, quod vocātur Bassās. Septimum fuit bellum in silvā Celidōnis, id est Cat Coit Celidōn. Octāvum fuit bellum in castellō Guinnion, in quō Arthur portāvit imāginem Sāctae Mariāe perpetuae virginis super humerōs suōs et pāgānī versī sunt in fugam in illō diē et caedēs magna fuit super illōs per virtūtem Domini nostrī Iēsu Chrīstī et per virtūtem Sāctae Mariāe genetrīcis eius.

¹It's interesting to note that the author specifically calls Arthur a *dux bellōrum* and not a king.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliud: other; singular neuter accusative from alius, alia, aliud
Arthur: the Arthur often referred to as King Arthur
Arthuriāna: things related to Arthur
autem: but, however, moreover
Bassās: the name of a river
bellōrum: of battles, wars; plural neuter genitive from bellum, bellī
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative or accusative from bellum, bellī
Britanniae: Britain; singular feminine genitive from Britannia, Britanniae
Brittannia: Britain
Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
caedēs: slaughter; singular feminine nominative from caedēs, caedis
Cantorum: of Kent, the region in Britain
castellō: castle, stronghold; singular neuter ablative from castellum, castellī
Cat Coit Celidōn: a forest
Celidonis: Cat Coit Celidōn, a forest
Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christi
contrā: against, away from, facing
crēscēbant: they were increasing; 3rd person plural imperfect active from crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
diēs: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diē
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diē
Domini: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, domini
Dubglas: the name of a river
dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from dux, ducis
eius: his/her/its
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
et: and
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
flūmen: river; singular neuter nominative or accusative from flūmen, flūminis
flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
fugam: flight, escape; singular feminine accusative from fuga, fugae
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
genetricis: mother; singular feminine genitive from genetrīx, genetricis
Glein: the name of a river
Guinnion: the name of a castle
Hengistō: Hengist, a Saxon warrior (ablative case)
humerōs: shoulders; plural masculine accusative from humerus, humeri
id: it
Iēsū: Jesus, genitive singular of Iēsūs
illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
imāginem: image; singular feminine accusative from imāgō, imāginis
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
invalēscēbant: they were growing strong; 3rd person plural imperfect active from invalēscō, invalēscere, invalui, -
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
ipsō: he himself; singular masculine ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
IV: 4 as a Roman numeral
Linnuis: the name of a region
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
Mariae: of Mary; singular feminine genitive from Mariā, Mariae
mortuō: having died; singular masculine ablative perfect participle from morior, morī, mortuus sum
multitūdine: multitude, great number; singular feminine ablative from multitūdō, multitūdinis
nostrī: our; sing. masc. gen. or pl. masc. nom. or sing. neut. gen. of noster
octāvum: 8th
Octha: Octha, son of Hengist
ortī: orti sunt: they arose; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from orior, orīrī, ortus
ōstium: mouth (of a river); singular neuter nominative from

ōstium, ōstī
pāgānī: pagans; plural masculine nominative from pāgānus, pāgāni
parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
per: through
perpetuae: perpetual; singular feminine genitive from perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum
portāvit: he carried; 3rd person singular perfect active from porto, portare, portavi, portatus
prīmum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīmum
pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
quārtum: fourth
quintum: fifth
quō: what; singular ablative of quis
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgni
sānctae: holy
Saxonēs: The Saxons
secundum: second
sed: but
septimum: seventh
sextum: sixth
silvā: forest; singular feminine ablative from silva, silvae
sinistrāli: left (either north or west), singular feminine ablative from sinistra, sinistrae
sunt: they were; 3rd person plural present for sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
suōs: their; plural accusative of suus
super: above, on top of
tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
transivit: he crossed; 3rd person singular perfect active from trānseō, trānsire, trānsivi(ii), trānsitus
tunc: then
versī: versī sunt = they turned; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from vertō, vertere, vertī, versum
virginis: virgin; singular feminine genitive from virgō, virginis
virtūtem: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine accusative from virtūs, virtūtis
vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Nōnum bellum gestum est in urbe Legiōnis. Decimum gessit bellum in lītore flūminis, quod vocātur Tribuit. Ūndecimum factum est bellum in monte, quī dīcitur Agned. Duodecimum fuit bellum in monte Badōnis, in quō corruērunt in ūnō diē nōngentī sexāgintā virī dē ūnō impetū Arthur; et nēmō prōstrāvit eōs nisi ipse sōlus, et in omnibus bellīs victor extitit. Et ipsī, dum in omnibus bellīs prōsternēbantur, auxilium ā Germāniā petēbant et augēbantur multipliciter sine intermissiōne et rēgēs ā Germāniā dēdūcēbant, ut rēgnārent super illōs in Brittanniā usque ad tempus quō Īdā rēgnāvit, quī fuit Eobba filius. Ipse fuit prīmus rēx in Beornicā.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Agned: the name of a mountain
 Arthur: Arthur; often referred to as King Arthur
 augēbantur: they were being increased; 3rd person plural
 imperfect passive from augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus
 auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium,
 auxili
 Badonis: the name of a mountain
 Beornica: Bernicia, an Anglo-Saxon kingdom
 bellis: battles, wars; plural neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative or accusative
 from bellum, bellī
 Britannia: Britain
 corruērunt: they fell, collapsed; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from corruō, corruere, corruī, corrutus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decimum: tenth
 dēdūcēbant: they were leading out; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus
 dīcitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dīcō,
 dicere, dixi, dictus
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dum: while, as long as, until
 duodecimum: twelfth
 Eobba: father of Ida
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 et: and
 extitit: he stood out; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 extō, extāre, extiti, -
 factum: factum est = it was made; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 Germāniā: Germany; singular feminine ablative from Germānia,
 Germāniae
 gessit: he waged, carried; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 gestum: gestum est = it was waged; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 Ida: a king
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 impetū: attack, assault, fury; singular masculine ablative from
 impetus, impetūs
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intermissiōne: intermission, interruption; singular feminine
 ablative from intermissiō, intermissiōnis
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 ipsi: they themselves; plural masculine nominative from ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum
 Legiōnis: a city
 lītore: beach, shore; singular neuter ablative from lītus, lītoris
 monte: mountain; singular masculine ablative from mōns,
 montis
 multipliciter: numerous
 nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōngentī: 900
 nōnum: ninth
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 petēbant: they were asking for; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from petō, petere, petīvī, petitus
 p̄mus: first; singular masculine nominative from p̄mus,
 p̄ma, p̄mum
 prosternēbantur: they were being stricken down; 3rd person
 plural imperfect passive from prosternō, prosternere,
 prostrāvī, prostrātus
 prostrāvit: he prostrated; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvī, prostrātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, regis
 rēgnārent: they had reigned; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, regis
 sexāgintā: sixty
 sine: without
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 solum (gen -ius)
 super: above, on top of
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter nominative from tempus,
 temporis

Tribuit: the name of a river
 ūndecimum: eleventh
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, p̄mus
 -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor,
 victōris
 viri: man; singular neuter genitive from virus, viri
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

V. Regum Genealogiae cum Computō

57 Wodēn genuit Beldeg, genuit Beornec, genuit Gechbrond, genuit Alusōn, genuit Inguec, genuit Aedibrith, genuit Ossā, genuit Eobba, genuit Īda.

Īda autem duodecim filiōs habuit, quōrum nōmina sunt Addā, Aedldric, Decdric, Edric, Deothere, Osmer, et ūnam rēgīnam Bearnoch, Ealric, Ealdric genuit Aelfret.

Ipse est Aedlfred Fleasur. nam et ipse habuit filiōs septem, quōrum nōmina sunt Anfrid, Osguald, Osbiu, Osgudu, Oslapf, Offa, Osguid genuit Alcfrid, et Aelfguin, et Echfrid.

Echfrid ipse est quī fēcit bellum contrā frātruēlem suum, quī erat rēx Pictōrum nōmine Birdēi et ibi corruit cum omnī rōbore exercitus suī et Picti cum rēge suō victōrēs extitērunt et numquam addidērunt Saxonēs ambrōnum¹ ut ā Pictis vectīgal exigerent. Ā tempore istius bellī vocātur Gueith Līn Garan.

Osguid autem habuit duās uxōrēs, quārum ūna vocābātur Riemmelth filia Royth filiū Rum et alter vocābātur Eanfled filiā Eadguin filiū Allī.

¹*And the Picts with their king emerged as victors and the Saxons never acquired of the barbarians so that the Picts would pay tribute.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 Addā: one of the twelve sons of Ida
 addiderunt: they acquired; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 addō, addere, addidī, additus
 Aedibrith: an ancestor of Ida
 Aedldric: one of the twelve sons of Ida
 Aedlfred
 Aelfguin: a descendant of Osguid
 Aelfret: a descendant of Ida
 Alcfred: a descendant of Osguid
 Allī: grandfather of Eanfled
 alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter,
 altera, alterum
 Aluson: an ancestor of Ida
 ambrōnum: of the barbarians; plural masculine genitive from
 ambro, ambronis
 Anfrid: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Bearnoch: a descendant of Ida
 Beldeg: an ancestor of Ida
 belli: battle, war; singular neuter genitive from bellum, bellī
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative or accusative
 from bellum, bellī
 Beornec: an ancestor of Ida
 Birdei: a Pictish king
 computō: computation; singular masculine ablative from
 computus, computī
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 corruit: he collapsed, destroyed; 3rd person singular present
 active from corruō, corruere, corruī, corrutus
 cum: with
 Decdric: one of the twelve sons of Ida
 Deother: one of the twelve sons of Ida
 duās: two; plural feminine accusative from duo -ae o, secundus
 -a -um, binī -ae -a, bis
 duodecim: twelve
 Eadguin: an ancestor of Eanfled
 Ealdric: a descendant of Ida
 Ealric: a descendant of Ida
 Eanfled: one of the wives of Osguid
 Echfrid: a descendant of Osguid
 Edric: one of the twelve sons of Ida
 Eobba: an ancestor of Ida
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futurus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futurus
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 exigent: they might have paid; 3rd personal plural subjunctive
 imperfect from exigere
 extiterunt: they emerged; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 extō, extāre, extiti, -
 fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,
 facere, fēcī, factus
 filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae
 filiī: son; singular masculine genitive from filius, fili
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 Fleasur: Aedlfred Fleasur
 fratruelem: fraternal nephew; singular masculine accusative
 from frātruēlis, frātruēlis
 Garan: Gueith Lin Garan, a place-name
 Gechbrond: an ancestor of Ida
 geneālogiae: genealogies; plural feminine nominative from
 geneālogia, geneālogiae
 genuit: he begot; 3rd person singular perfect active from gignō,
 gignere, genuī, genitus
 Gueith: The Isle of Wight, an island just off the southern coast of
 Great Britain in the English channel. The name Gueith is
 from Old Welsh.
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habēō,
 habēre, habuī, habitus
 ibi: there, then
 Ida: a descendant of Woden
 Inguec: an ancestor of Ida
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 istius: of this; singular genitive from iste, ista, istud
 Lin: Gueith Lin Garan, a place-name
 nam: yes, truly
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 numquam: never
 Offa: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 omni: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 Osbiu: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 Osguold: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 Osgudu: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 Osguid: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 Oslapf: one of the seven sons of Aedlfred Fleasur
 Osmer: one of the twelve sons of Ida
 Ossā: an ancestor of Ida
 Picti: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
 Pictis: Picts, a Scottish tribe (ablative case)
 Pictōrum: of the Picts
 quārum: which; plural female genitive from qui
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quōrum: of which; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 rēginam: queen; singular feminine accusative from rēgina,
 rēginae
 rēgum: of kings; plural masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Riemmelth: one of the wives of Osguid
 rōbore: strength; singular neuter ablative from rōbur, rōboris
 Royth: an ancestor of Riemmelth
 Rum: an ancestor of Riemmelth
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 septem: seven
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futurus
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter from tempus, temporis
 ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from ūnus -a -um,
 prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from ūnus -a -um,
 prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 uxōrēs: wives; plural feminine nominative from uxor, uxōris
 V: 5 as a Roman numeral
 vectigal: tax, tribute, revenue; singular neuter nominative from
 vectigal, vectigālis
 victōrēs: victors; plural masculine nominative from victor,
 victōris
 vocābātur: it was being called, summoned; 3rd person singular
 imperfect passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 Woden: an ancestor of Ida

Dē geneālogiā rēgum Cantiae.

58 Hengīst genuit Otha, genuit Ossā, genuit Eormoric, genuit Ealdbert, genuit Ealdbald, genuit Ercunbert, genuit Ecgeberth.

Dē ortū rēgum Eastanglōrum.

59 Woden genuit Casser, genuit Titinōn, genuit Trigil, genuit Rodmunt, genuit Rippan, genuit Guillem Guechān, ipse prīmus rēgnāvit in Brittanniā super gentem Eastanglōrum. Guecha genuit Guffan, genuit Tydil, genuit Ecnī, genuit Adric, genuit Aldul, genuit Elric.

Dē geneālogiā Merciorum.

60 Woden genuit Guedolgeat, genuit Gueagōn, genuit Guithleg, genuit Guerdmund, genuit Offa, genuit Ongen, genuit Eamer, genuit Pubba. Ipse Pubba habuit duodecim filiōs, quōrum duo notitiōrēs mihi sunt quam aliī, id est Penda et Ēuā filius Penda, filius Pubba. Ecgfrid filius Offa, filius Duminfert, filius Eandulf, filius Ossulf, filius Ēua, filius Pubba.

Adric: a descendant of Guecha
 Aldul: a descendant of Guecha
 alii: others; plural masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 Brittanniā: in Britain
 Cantiae: of Kent
 Casser: a descendant of Woden
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Duminfert: a descendant of Pubba
 duo: two
 duodecim: twelve
 Ealdbald: a descendant of Hengist
 Ealdbert: a descendant of Hengist
 Eamer: a descendant of Woden
 Eandulf: a descendant of Pubba
 Eastanglorum: of East Anglia
 Ecgbirth: a descendant of Hengist
 Ecgrif: a descendant of Pubba
 Ecnī: a descendant of Guecha
 Elric: a descendant of Guecha
 Eormoric: a descendant of Hengist
 Ercunbert: a descendant of Hengist
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 Eua: a descendant of Woden
 filiōs: sons; plural masculine accusative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 genealogiā: genealogy; singular feminine ablative from genealogia, genealogiae
 gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from gēns, gentis
 genuit: he begot; 3rd person singular perfect active from gigno, gignere, genui, genitus
 Gueagōn: a descendant of Woden
 Guecha: a descendant of Woden
 Guechan: Guillem Guechān, a descendant of Woden
 Guedolgeat: a descendant of Woden
 Guerdmund: a descendant of Woden
 Guffan: a descendant of Guecha
 Guillem: Guillem Guechān, a descendant of Woden
 Guithleg: a descendant of Woden
 habuit: he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 Hengist: a Saxon warrior
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 Merciorum: of Mercia
 mihi: to me; (pronoun)
 notitiōrēs: more known; variate spelling of the comparative from nōtus -a -um
 Octha: a descendant of Hengist
 Offa: a descendant of Woden
 Ongen: a descendant of Woden
 ortu: beginning, rising; singular neuter ablative from orior, orīrī, ortus sum
 Ossā: Ossa, a descendant of Hengist
 Ossulf: a descendant of Pubba
 Penda: a descendant of Pubba
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus, prīma, primum
 Pubba: a descendant of Woden
 quam: how? how much?
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgum: of kings; plural masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 Rippan: a descendant of Woden
 Rodmunt: a descendant of Woden
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 super: above, on top of
 Titinōn: a descendant of Woden
 Trigil: a descendant of Woden
 Tydil: a descendant of Guecha
 Woden: an ancestor of many kings in Britain

Dē rēgibus Deurōrum.

61 Woden genuit Beldeyg. Brond genuit Siggarr, genuit Sebald, genuit Zegulf, genuit Soemil, ipse prīmus sēparāvit Deur ō Birneich. Soemil genuit Sguerthing, genuit Giulglis, genuit Usfreat, genuit Iffi, genuit Ūllī, Aedgum, Osfird, et Eadfird.

Duo filiī Edgum erant et cum ipsō corruērunt in bellō Meicen, et dē orīgine illius numquam iterātum est rēgnum, quia nōn ēvāsit ūnus dē genere illius dē istō bellō, sed interfectī omnēs sunt cum illō ab exercitū Catguollaūnī rēgis Guendōtae regiōnis.

Osguid genuit Ecgfird. Ipse est Ecgfrid Ailguin genuit Oslach, genuit Alhun, genuit Adlsing, genuit Ēchūn, genuit Oslaph. Īda genuit Eadric, genuit Ecgulf, genuit Liodguald, genuit Aetān. Ipse est Eāta Glinmaur genuit Eadbyrth et Ecgbirth epīscopum, quī fuit prīmus dē nātiōne eōrum.

Īda filius Eobba tenuit regiōnēs in sinistrālī parte Brittanniae, id est Umbrī maris, et rēgnāvit annīs duodecim, et ūnxit Dinguayrdī Guurth Berneich.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 Adlsing: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
 Aedgum: a descendant of Soemil
 Aetan: a descendant of Ida
 Ailguin: Ecgfrid Ailguin
 Alhun: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, anni
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
 Beldeyg: a descendant of Woden
 Birneich: Bernicia, a region in Britain
 Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Brond: father of Siggar
 Catguollauni: of Catguollaunus, a king in Britain
 corruērunt: they fell, collapsed; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from corruō, corruere, corruī, corrutus
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 Deur: Deira, a region in Britain
 Deurōrum: of Deira, an early medieval kingdom around modern-day York
 Dinguayrdi: Dinguayrdus (?) Guurth Berneich
 duo: two
 duodecim: twelve
 Eadbyrth: a descendant of Eāta Glinmaur
 Eadfird: a descendant of Soemil
 Eadric: a descendant of Ida
 Eāta: Eāta Glinmaur, a descendant of Ida
 Ecgbirth: a descendant of Eāta Glinmaur
 Ecgfird: Ecgfrid Ailguin
 Ecgfrid: Ecgfrid Ailguin, a descendant of Osguid
 Ecgulf: a descendant of Ida
 Echun: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
 Edgum: a man who fell in the battle/war Meicen
 Eobba: a descendant of Ida
 eōrum: their; plural masc. or neuter: genitive
 episcopum: bishop; singular masculine accusative from
 episcopus, episcopi
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 evāsīt: he avoided, he escaped; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from evādō, evādere, evāsī, evāsus
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exerceo, exercere, exercui, exercitus
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 genere: family, offspring; singular neuter ablative from genus, generis
 genuit: he begot; 3rd person singular perfect active from gignō, gignere, genui, genitum
 Giulglis: a descendant of Soemil
 Glinmaur: Eāta Glinmaur, a descendant of Ida
 Guendotae: a region in Britain
 Guurth: Dinguayrdus (?) Guurth Berneich
 id: it
 Ida: father of Eadric
 Iffi: a descendant of Soemil
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 interfecti: interfecti sunt = they were killed; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from interficiō, interficere, interfēci, interfectus
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ipso: he himself; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 isto: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from iste, ista, istud
 iterātum: iterātum est = it was repeated; singular neuter
 nominative perfect passive participle from iterō, iterāre, iterāvī, iterātus
 Liodguald: a descendant of Ida
 maris: sea; singular neuter genitive from mare, maris
 Meicen: name of a battle or war
 natiōne: race, tribe, nation; singular feminine ablative from natiō, natiōnis
 nōn: not
 numquam: never
 omnes: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orīgine: origin; singular feminine ablative from orīgō, orīginis
 Osfird: a descendant of Soemil
 Osguid: father of Ecgfird
 Oslach: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
 Oslaph: a descendant of Ecgfrid Ailguin
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus, prīma, prīmum
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnes: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnis: regions; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 Sebald: a descendant of Brond
 sed: but
 sēparāvit: he divided, separated; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātus
 Sguerthing: a descendant of Soemil
 Siggar: a descendant of Brond
 sinistrāli: left, singular feminine ablative from sinistra, sinistrae
 Soemil: a descendant of Brond
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
 Ūlli: a descendant of Soemil
 Umbri: possibly the Humber Estuary
 ūnus: one
 ūnixit: he anointed; 3rd person singular perfect active from ungō, ungere, unxi, unctus
 Usfrea: a descendant of Soemil
 Woden: a progenitor of kings in Britain
 Zegulf: a descendant of Brond

62 Tunc Dutigirn in illō tempore fortiter dīmicābat contrā gentem Anglōrum. Tunc Talhaern Tataguen in poēmate clāruit et Neirin, et Taliessin, et Bluchbard, et Cīan, quī vocātur Guenith Guaut, simul¹ ūnō tempore in poēmate Britannicō clāruērunt. Mailcunus magnus rēx apud Brittōnēs rēgnābat, id est in regiōne Guenedōtae, quia atavus illius, id est Cunedag, cum filiīs suīs, quōrum numerus octo erat, vēnerat prius dē parte sinistrālī, id est dē regiōne quae vocātur Manau Guotodin, centum quadrāgintā sex annīs antequam Mailcun rēgnāret, et Scottōs cum ingentissimā clāde expulērunt ab istīs regiōnibus et nusquam reversī sunt iterum ad habitandum.

¹*At the same time they became famous in British poetry.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Anglōrum: of the Anglos, Englishmen; plural masculine genitive from Anglus, Anglī
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 antequam: before
 apud: at, by, near
 atavus: ancestor; singular masculine nominative from atavus, atavī
 Bluchbard: a British poet
 Brittannicō: Britannic (ablative case)
 Brittonēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine accusative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 centum: hundred; from centum, centesimus -a -um, centeni -ae -a, centie (n)s
 Cian: Guenith Guaut, a British poet
 clāde: ruins, destruction, defeat; singular feminine ablative from clādēs, clādīs
 clāruērunt: they became famous; 3rd person plural perfect active from clārēscō, clārēscere, clāruī, -
 clāruit: he became famous; 3rd person singular perfect active from clārēscō, clārēscere, clāruī, -
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 Cunedag: Cunedda ap Edern, King of Gwynedd, an early Welsh leader who reigned circa AD 450-460. Cunedda is mentioned again in section 15.
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dimicābat: he fought; 3rd person singular imperfect active from dimicō, dimicāre, dimicāvī, dimicātus
 Dutigirn: a king who fought against the Anglos
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 expulērunt: they expelled; 3rd person plural perfect active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
 filiis: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, fili
 fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)
 gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from gēns, gentis
 Guaut: Guenith Guaut, a British poet
 Guenedotae: a region in Britain
 Guenith: Guenith Guaut, a British poet
 Guotodin: Manau Guotodin, a region in Britain
 habitandum: living; singular neuter accusative gerund from habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illō: that; neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ingentissimā: very large; singular feminine ablative from ingēns, ingentis (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
 istis: those; plural dative or ablative from iste, ista, istud
 iterum: again
 māgnus: great; singular masculine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Mailcun: Mailcun, a king
 Mailcunus: Mailcun, a king
 Manau: possibly the region near the Isle of Man, an island between Great Britain and Ireland.
 Neirin: Neirin, a British poet
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from numerus, numeri
 nusquam: nowhere
 octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 poēmate: poem; singular neuter ablative from poēma, poēmatis
 prius: before
 quadrāgintā: 40
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnibus: regions; plural feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnāret: he reigned; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 reversī: reversī sunt = they returned; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from revertor, revertī, reversus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Scottōs: the Scots
 sex: six
 simul: at the same time as
 sinistrālī: left (north?), singular feminine ablative from sinistra, sinistrae
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 Talhaern: Talhaern Tataguen, a British poet
 Taliessin: Taliessin, a British poet
 Tataguen: Talhaern Tataguen, a British poet
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 tunc: then
 ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 vēnerat: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

63 Addā filius Īdā rēgnāvit annīs octo. Aedlric filius Addā rēgnāvit quattuor annīs. Deoric filius Īda rēgnāvit septem annīs. Friodolguald rēgnāvit sex annīs. In cuius tempore rēgnum Cantōrum mittente¹ Gregōriō baptismum suscēpit. Hussā rēgnāvit annīs septem: contrā illum quattuor rēgēs Urbgen et Riderchhen et Guallanc et Morcant dīmīcāvērunt. Deodric contrā illum Urbgēn cum filiīs dīmīcābat fortiter. In illō autem tempore aliquandō hostēs, nunc cīvēs vincēbantur et ipse conclūsit eōs tribus diēbus et noctibus in īsulā Metcaud et dum erat in expeditiōne, iugulātus est Morcantō dēstinante² prō invidiā, quia in ipsō prae omnibus rēgibus virtūs maxima erat īnstaurationē bellī.

¹*In whose time the kingdom of Kent, by means of the sending of Gregory, undertook baptism.* This is referring to when Pope Gregory the Great (papacy AD 590-604) undertook a large-scale missions effort to convert the Anglo-Saxons.

²*He (Deodric) was killed by Morcant for the reason of envy, because in him, before all the kings, was the greatest ability for the renewal of war.* Morcant killed, or ordered the killing of, Deodric, because Deodric was the best military commander he was fighting against.

Addā: Adda, son of Ida
 Aedric: a king
 aliquandō: some day
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 autem: but, however, moreover
 baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from
 baptismus, baptismi
 belli: of war; singular neuter genitive from bellum, bellī
 Cantorum: of Kent
 cives: citizens; plural common nominative from civis, civis
 conclūsit: he shut, confined, enclosed; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from conclūdō, conclūdere, conclūsi,
 conclūsus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
 cum: with
 Deodric: fought against Urbgēn, possibly the same person as
 Deoric
 Deoric: a descendant of Ida, possibly the same person as
 Deodric
 dēstinante: determining; singular ablative present participle
 from dēstinō, dēstināre, dēstināvī, dēstinātus
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dimicābat: he fought; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 dimicō, dimicāre, dimicāvī, dimicātus
 dimicāverunt: they fought; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 dimicō, dimicāre, dimicāvī, dimicātus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 expeditiōne: expedition, campaign; singular feminine ablative
 from expeditiō, expeditiōnis
 filiis: sons; plural masculine ablative from filius, fili
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)
 Friodolwald: a king
 Gregoriō: Pope Gregory the Great (papacy AC 590-604)
 (ablative case)
 Guallanc: one of the four kings who fought Husa
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from hostis, hostis
 Husa: a king
 Ida: father of Adda
 illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa,
 illud
 illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 instauratiōne: renewal, repetition; singular feminine ablative
 from instauratiō, instauratiōnis
 insulā: island; singular feminine ablative from insula, insulae
 invidiā: envy, spite; singular feminine nominative from invidia,
 invidiae
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 ipsō: he himself; singular neuter ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iugulātus: iugulātus est = he was killed; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from iugulō, iugulāre,
 iugulāvī, iugulātus
 maxima: biggest; singular feminine nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 Metcaud: an island
 mittente: sending; singular ablative present participle from
 mittō, mittere, misi, missus
 Morcant: one of the four kings who fought Husa
 Morcantō: one of the four kings who fought Husa (ablative
 case)
 noctibus: nights; plural feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 nunc: now
 octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 prae: before, in front, because of
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quattuor: 4
 quia: because
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, regis
 rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, regis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum,
 rēgni
 Riderchhen: one of the four kings who fought Husa
 septem: seven
 sex: six
 suscēpit: he undertook, he received; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis

tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 Urbgen: one of the four kings who fought Husa
 vincēbantur: they were conquered; 3rd person plural imperfect
 passive from vincō, vincere, vici, victus
 virtūs: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine nominative
 from virtūs, virtūtis

Eadfered Flesours rēgnāvit duodecim annīs in Berneich et aliōs duodecim in Deur, vīgintī quattuor annīs inter duo rēgna rēgnāvit et dedit uxōrī¹ suae Dinguoaroy, quae vocātur Bebbab, et dē nōmine suae accēpit nōmen, id est Bebbanburth. Eoguin filius Allī rēgnāvit annīs decem et septem et ipse occupāvit Elmet et expulit Certic rēgem illius regiōnīs.

Eanfled filia illius duodecimō diē post pentēcostēn baptismum accēpit cum ūiversīs hominibus suīs dē virīs et mulieribus cum eā. Eadgum vērō in sequentī Paschā baptismum suscēpit et duodecim mīllia hominum baptizātī sunt cum eō. Sī quis scīre voluerit, quis eōs baptizāvit, Rum map Urbgēn baptizāvit eōs et per quadrāgintā diēs nōn cessāvit baptizāre omne genus ambrōnum et praedicātiōnem illius multī crēdidērunt Chrīstō.

¹*And he gave to his wife, who is called Bebbab, Dinguoaroy and from her name it tooks its name, which is Bebbanburth.*

accēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
aliōs: others; plural masculine accusative from alius, alia, aliud
Alli: father of Eoguin
ambrōnum: of the barbarians; plural masculine genitive from ambro, ambronis
annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
baptismum: baptism; singular masculine accusative from baptisumus, baptisumi
baptizāre: to baptize; present infinitive from baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
baptizāti: baptizāti sunt = they were baptized; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
baptizāvit: he baptized; 3rd person singular perfect active from baptizō, baptizāre, baptizāvī, baptizātus
Bebbab: Bebbab, wife of Eadfered Flesaur's
Bebbanburth: a place named after Bebbab
Berneich: Bernicia, a region in Britain
Certic: a king
cessāvit: he ceased; 3rd person singular perfect active from cessō, cessāre, cessāvī, cessātus
Chrīstō: Christ
crēdiderunt: they believed; 3rd person plural perfect active from credo, credere, credidi, creditus
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
decem: ten
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus
Deur: Deira, a region in Britain
diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
diēs: days; plural common nominative from diēs, diēi
Dinguoaroy: a place later named after Bebbab
duo: two
duodecim: twelve
duodecimō: twelfth (ablative of duodecim)
eā: with her; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
Eadfered: Eadfered Flesaur's, a king
Eadgum: someone who was baptized with many others
Eanfled: someone who was baptized with many others
Elmet: a place that Eoguin occupied
eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
Eoguin: son of Alli
eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
et: and
expulit: he drove out, expelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus
filia: daughter; singular feminine nominative from filia, filiae
filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
Flesaur's: Eadfered Flesaur's, a king
genus: race, nation; singular neuter accusative from genus, generis
hominibus: persons, men; plural masculine ablative from homō, hominis
hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from homō, hominis
id: it
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inter: between, among, during
ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
map: son, in Old Welsh; Rum map Urbgēn = Rum, son of Urbgēn
millia: thousands; plural neuter nominative from mille, millis
mulieribus: women; plural feminine ablative from mulier, mulieris
multī: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
occupāvit: he seized, attacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from occupo, occupare, occupavi, occupatus
omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
Paschā: Passover, Easter; singular feminine ablative from Pascha, Paschae
Pentēcostēn: Pentecost; singular feminine accusative from Pentecoste, Pentecostes
per: through
post: behind, after, since
praedicātiōnem: public proclamation, preaching; singular feminine accusative from praedicātiō, praedicātiōnis
quadrāgintā: 40
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis

quattuor: 4
quis: who
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō, regiōnis
rēgna: kingdoms; plural neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgni
rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
Rum: Rum map Urbgēn = Rum, son of Urbgēn
scire: to know; present infinitive from sciō, scire, scīvī, scītus
septem: seven
sequenti: following; singular ablative present participle from sequor, sequi, secūtus sum
sī: if
suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine nom. or voc. from suus
suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
suscēpit: he undertook; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
ūniversis: whole, entire; plural ablative from ūniversus, ūniversa, ūniversum
Urbgen: one of the four kings who fought Hussa
uxōri: wife; singular feminine dative from uxor, uxōris
vērō: truly, even so, still
vīginti: 20
virīs: men; plural neuter ablative from virus, viri
vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from volō, velle, volui, -

64 Oswald filius Eadfered rēgnāvit novem annīs: ipse est Oswald Lamnguin. Ipse occīdit Catgublaun rēgem Guenedōtae regiōnis in bellō Catscaul cum magnā clāde exercitūs suī. Osguid filius Eadlfrid rēgnāvit vīgintī octo annīs et sex mēnsibus. Dum ipse rēgnābat, venit mortālītās hominum Catgualart rēgnante apud Brittōnēs post patrem suum et in eā periit. Et ipse occīdit Pantha in campō Gāi et nunc facta est strāgēs Gāi campī et rēgēs Brittōnum interfectī sunt, quī exierant cum rēge Pantha in expeditiōne usque ad urbem, quae vocātur Iudeu.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 annīs: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, annī
 apud: at, by, near
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
 Brittōnēs: Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural masculine
 accusative from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural
 masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
 campī: fields; singular masculine genitive from campus, campī
 campō: field; singular masculine ablative from campus, campī
 Catgualart: a king
 Catgublaun: a king
 Catscaul: the name of a war or battle
 clāde: ruins, destruction, defeat; singular feminine ablative from
 clādēs, clādīs
 cum: with
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eā: it; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
 Eadfered: father of Oswald
 Eadlfrid: father of Osguid
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine genitive from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 exierant: they had gone out; 3rd person plural pluperfect active
 from exeō, exire, exiī, exitus
 expeditiōne: expedition, campaign; singular feminine ablative
 from expeditiō, expeditiōnis
 facta: facta est = it was made; singular feminine nominative
 perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 Gāi: a field
 Guenedotae: a region, like Gwynedd
 hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, hominis
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 interfectī: interfectī sunt = they were killed; plural masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from interficiō,
 interficere, interfēcī, interfectus
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 Iudeu: the name of a city
 Lamnguin: Oswald Lamnguin, a king
 māgnā: large; singular feminine ablative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mēnsibus: months; plural masculine ablative from mēnsis,
 mēnsis
 mortālītās: mortality; singular feminine nominative from
 mortālītās, mortālītātis
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 nunc: now
 occīdit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō,
 occidere, occidi, occisus
 octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
 Osguid: the son of Eadlfrid
 Oswald: a king
 Pantha: a king
 patrem: father; singular masculine accusative from pater, patris
 perivit: he perished; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 pereō, perire, periī, peritus
 post: behind, after, since
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from
 rēx, rēgis
 regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō,
 regiōnis
 rēgnābat: he was reigning; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnante: reigning; singular ablative present participle from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 sex: six
 strāgēs: destruction, overthrow; singular feminine nominative
 from strāgēs, strāgis
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 vīginti: 20
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

65 Tunc reddidit Osguid omnēs dīvitiās, quae erant cum eō in urbe, usque in manū Pendae et Penda distribuit ea rēgibus Brittōnum, id est Atbret Iudeu. Sōlus autem Catgabail rēx Guenedōtae regiōnis cum exercitū suō ēvāsit dē nocte cōnsurgēns, quāpropter vocātus est Catgabail Catguommed. Ecgfrid filius Osbiū rēgnāvit novem annīs. In tempore illius sānctus Cudbert epīscopus obiit in īnsulā Medcaut. Ipse est quī fēcit bellum contrā Pictōs et corruit ibī.

Penda filius Pybba rēgnāvit decem annīs. Ipse prīmus sēparāvit rēgnum Merciōrum ā rēgnō Nordōrum et Onnan rēgem Easteranglōrum et sānctum Oswaldum rēgem Nordōrum occīdit per dolum. Ipse fēcit bellum Cocboy, in quō cecidit Eoua filius Pippa frāter eius rēx Merciōrum et Oswald rēx Nordōrum et ipse victor fuit per diabolicum artem. Nōn erat baptizātus et numquam Deō crēdidit.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 annis: years; plural masculine ablative from annus, anni
 artem: art, skill; singular feminine accusative from ars, artis
 Atbret: name of a region
 autem: but, however, moreover
 baptizātus: having been baptized; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from baptizō,
 baptizāre, baptizāvi, baptizātus
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum,
 belli
 Brittōnum: of the Britons, inhabitants of Britain; plural
 masculine genitive from Brittō, Brittōnis
 Catgabail: king of Gwynedd
 Catguommed: a Welsh epithet for Catgabail, possible meaning
 "battle-leader"
 cecidit: he fell; 3rd person singular perfect active from cadō,
 cadere, cecidī, cāsus
 Cochoy: the name of a war or battle
 cōnsurgēns: standing up, rising; singular nominative present
 participle from cōnsurgō, cōnsurgere, cōnsurrēxi,
 cōnsurrēctus
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 corruit: he fell, collapsed; 3rd person singular present active
 from corruō, corruere, corruī, corrutus
 crēdidit: he believed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 credo, credere, credidi, creditus
 Cudbert: Saint Cuthbert of Lindisfarne (c. 634-687)
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 decem: ten
 Deō: god; singular masculine dative from Deus, Dei
 diabolicum: diabolic, devilish; singular neuter nominative from
 diabolicus, diabolica, diabolicum
 distribuit: he distributed; 3rd person singular present active
 from distribuō, distribuere, distribui, distribūtus
 dīvitias: riches, wealth; plural feminine accusative from dīvitia,
 dīvitiae
 dolum: trickery, deception; singular masculine accusative from
 dolus, doli
 ea: it; plural neuter or accusative from is, ea, id
 Easteranglorum: of East Anglia
 Ecgfrid: a king
 eius: his/her/its
 eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 Eoua: son of Pippa
 episcopus: overseer, bishop; singular masculine nominative
 from episcopus, episcopi
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 evāsīt: he avoided, he escaped; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from evādō, evādere, evāsī, evāsus
 exercitū: army; singular neuter ablative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,
 facere, fēcī, factus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter,
 frātris
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 Guenedotae: of Gwynedd
 ibi: there, then
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insulā: island; singular feminine ablative from insula, insulae
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 Iudeu: name of a region
 manū: hand; singular feminine ablative from manus, manūs
 Medcaut: Inner Farne Island, where Saint Cuthbert died in 687
 Merciorum: of Mercia
 nocte: night; singular feminine ablative from nox, noctis
 nōn: not
 Nordorum: of the Nords/Norse
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 numquam: never
 obiit: he died; die; 3rd person singular perfect active from obo,
 obire, obiī, obitus
 occīdit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō,
 occīdere, occīdī, occīsus
 omnes: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 Onnan: Onna, king of East Anglia
 Osbiū: Osbius, father of Ecgfrid
 Osguid: a king
 Oswald: king of Nords/Norse
 Oswaldum: Saint Oswald of Northumbria (c.604-642)
 Penda: a king
 Pendae: of Penda
 per: through
 Pictōs: Picts, a Scottish tribe;
 Pippa: father of Eoua
 prīmus: first; singular masculine nominative from prīmus,
 prīma, prīmum
 Pybba: father of Penda
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quāpropter: that's why
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 reddidit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgibus: kings; plural masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō,
 regiōnis
 rēgnāvit: he reigned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum,
 rēgnī
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sānctum: holy, saint
 sānctus: holy, saint
 sēparāvit: he divided, separated; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātus
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 sōlum (gen -ius)
 suō: their; singular dative or ablative of suus
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
 tunc: then
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor,
 victōris
 vocātus: vocātus est = it was called; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre,
 vocāvī, vocātus

66 Ā mundi prīncipiō usque ad Cōstantīnum et Rūfum quīnque mīlia sexcentī quīnquāgintā octo annī reperiuntur. Item ā duōbus Geminīs Rūfō et Rubelīō usque in Stillitīonem cōsulem trecentī septuāgintā trēs annī sunt. Item ā Stillitiōne usque ad Valentīniānum filium Placidae et rēgnū Guorthigirnī vīgintī octo annī. Et ā rēgnō Guorthigirnī usque ad discordiam Guitolīnī et Ambrosiī annī sunt duodecim, quod est Guoloppum; id est Catguoloph. Guorthigirnus autem tenuit imperium in Brittanniā Theodosiō et Valentīniānō cōsulibus et in quārtō annō rēgnī suī Saxonēs ad Britanniam vērunt Fēlice et Taurō cōsulibus quadringentēsīmō annō ab incarnātiōne dominī nostrī Iēsu Chrīstī. Ab annō, quō Saxonēs vērunt in Britanniam et ā Guorthigirnō susceptī sunt, usque ad Decium et Valeriānum annī sunt sexāgintā novem.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Ambrosiī: Ambrosius
 annī: years; plural masculine nominative from annus, annī
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Brittanniā: in Britain (ablative case)
 Britanniam: Britain (accusative case)
 Catuoloph: possibly another name for Guoloppum
 Christi: of Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christi
 Constantinum: Constantine; (Emperor Constantine I 306-337; II 337-340; III 407-411); singular masculine accusative from Constantinus, Constantini
 cōsulem: consul; singular masculine accusative from cōsul, cōsulis
 cōsulibus: consuls; plural masculine ablative from cōsul, cōsulis
 Decium: Decius, Roman emperor from AD 249-251
 discordiam: discord, disagreement; singular feminine accusative
 from discordia, discordiae
 Domini: of the Lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, domini
 duōbus: two; plural masculine ablative from duo -ae o, secundus -a -um, binī -ae -a, bis
 duodecim: twelve
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 Fēlice: Flavius Felix, Roman consul in 428 alongside Flavius Taurus
 filium: son; singular masculine accusative from filius, fili
 geminīs: twins; plural ablative from geminus, gemina, geminum
 Guitolinī: Guitolinus
 Guoloppum: probably the name for the event of discord between Guitolinus and Ambrosius
 Guorthigirni: of Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (genitive case)
 Guorthigirno: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (dative or ablative case)
 Guorthigirnus: Guorthigirnus (Vortigern) (nominative case)
 id: it
 Iēsū: Jesus, genitive singular of Iēsūs
 imperium: command, dominion, empire; singular neuter accusative from imperium, imperi
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incarnātiōne: incarnation; singular feminine ablative from incarnātiō, incarnātiōnis
 item: just like
 milia: one thousand
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nostri: our; sing. masc. gen. or pl. masc. nom. or sing. neut. gen. of noster
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 octō: 8; from octo, octavus -a -um, octoni -ae -a, octie (n)s
 Placidae: Galla Placidia (c.392-450), daughter of Theodosius I, father of Valentinian III
 prīncipiō: beginning, origin; singular neuter ablative from principium, principi(i)
 quadringentēsīmō: 400
 quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor, quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quinquāgintā: fifty
 quinque: five
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgni: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnum, rēgni
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from rēgnum, rēgni
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgni
 reperiuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present passive from reperiō, reperire, reperi, repertus
 Rubelio: Rubelius
 Rūfō: Rufus (ablative case)
 Rūfum: Rufus (accusative case)
 Saxonēs: The Saxons
 septuāgintā: 70
 sexāgintā: sixty
 Stillitiō: possibly Stilicho (c. 359-408), a military commander in the Roman army
 Stillitionem: possibly Stilicho (c. 359-408), a military commander in the Roman army
 suī: of him; singular or plural genitive of se
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 suscepti: suscepti sunt = were received; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 Taurō: Flavius Taurus, Roman consul 428 AD alongside Flavius Felix
 tenuit: he held, he had; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenere, tenui, tentus
 Theodosiō: Theodosius II (408-450); singular masculine ablative from Theodosius, Theodosii
 trecenti: three hundred; plural masculine nominative from trecenti -ae -a, trecentimus -a -um, trecenti -ae -a, trecentie (n)s
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 usque: until, all the way, up until
 Valentiānō: Valentinian; (Emperor Flavius Valentinian I 364-375; II 375-392); singular masculine dative from Valentinianus, Valentiniani
 Valentiānum: Valentinian III, Western Roman Emperor from 425 to 455; singular masculine accusative from Valentinianus, Valentiniani
 Valeriānum: Valerian; (Emperor Publius Licinius Valerian 253-260); singular masculine accusative from Valerianus, Valeriani
 veniō, venīre, venī, ventus
 vīginti: 20

VI. Cīvitātēs Brittanniae

66a Haec sunt nōmina omnium cīvitātum, quae sunt in tōtā Brittanniā, quārum numerus est 28.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Cair Guorthigirn. | 15. Cair Peris. |
| 2. Cair Guinntguic. | 16. Cair Daun. |
| 3. Cair Mincip. | 17. Cair Legion. |
| 4. Cair Ligualid. | 18. Cair Guricon. |
| 5. Cair Meguaid. | 19. Cair Segeint. |
| 6. Cair Colun. | 20. Cair Legeion Guar Usic. |
| 7. Cair Ebrauc. | 21. Cair Guent. |
| 8. Cair Custoeint. | 22. Cair Brithon. |
| 9. Cair Caratauc. | 23. Cair Lerion. |
| 10. Cair Grauth. | 24. Cair Draitou. |
| 11. Cair Maunguid. | 25. Cair Pensa vel Coyt. |
| 12. Cair Lundem. | 26. Cair Urnarc. |
| 13. Cair Ceint. | 27. Cair Celemion. |
| 14. Cair Guiragon. | 28. Cair Luit Coyt. |

ā: from, out of, by, since
 Brithon: Cair Brithon, 'Fort of the Britons', Dumbarton in Strathclyde
 Brittanniā: in Britain
 Britanniae: Britain (nominative plural or genitive singular case)
 Cair: fort in Welsh
 Caratauc: Cair Caratauc, 'Fort Rampart', perhaps Salisbury
 Ceint: Cair Ceint, 'Fort Kent', Canterbury
 Celemion: Cair Celemion, perhaps Camalet
 civitatēs: cities; plural feminine nominative from cīvītās, cīvītātis
 cīvitatūm: of cities; plural feminine genitive from cīvītās, cīvītātis
 Colun: Cair Colun, 'Fort Colonia', perhaps Colchester
 Coyt: Cair Luit Coyt
 Custoeint: Cair Custoeint, 'Fort Constantius (or Constantine)', perhaps Caernarfon
 Daun: Cair Daun, 'Fort Don', Doncaster
 Draitou: Cair Draitou, perhaps Drayton
 Ebrauc: Cair Ebrauc, 'Fort York', York
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 Grauth: Cair Grauth, 'Fort Granta', Cambridge
 Guar: Cair Legeion Guar Usic
 Guent: Cair Guent, 'Fort Venta', perhaps Caerwent or Winchester
 Guinntguic: Cair Guinntguic, 'Fort Venta', perhaps Winchester
 Guiragon: Cair Guiragon, 'Fort Weorgoran', Worchester
 Guorthigirn: Cair Guorthigirn, 'Fort Vortigern', perhaps Carmarthen
 Guricon: Cair Guricon, perhaps Warwick
 haec: these; plural neuter nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 Legeion: Cair Legeion Guar Usic, 'Fort Legion on the Usk', Caerleon-upon-Usk
 Legion: Cair Legion, 'Fort Legion', Chester
 Lerion: Cair Leir, 'Fort Leir', Leicester
 Ligualid: Cair Ligualid, 'Fort Luguwalos', Carlisle
 Luit: Cair Luit Coyt
 Lundem: Cair Lundem, 'Fort Londinium', London
 Maunguid: Cair Maunguid, Manchester
 Meguaid: Cair Meguaid, 'Fort Mediolanum', perhaps Meifod
 Mincip: Cair Mincip, 'Fort Municipium', St. Albans
 nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 numerus: number; singular masculine nominative from numerus, numeri
 omnium: of all; plural genitive from omnis, omnis, omne
 Pensa: Cair Pensa vel Coyt: 'Fort Penselwood', perhaps Exeter
 Peris: Cair Peris, perhaps Portchester
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quārum: what; plural female genitive from qui
 Segeint: Cair Segeint, 'Fort Seiont', perhaps Caernarfon
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 tōtā: whole, total; singular feminine ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 Urnarc: Cair Urnarc, perhaps Wroxeter
 Usic: Cair Legeion Guar Usic
 vel: or
 VI: 6 as a Roman numeral

VII. Dē Mīrābilibus Brittanniae

67 Primum mīrāculum est stāgnum Lumonoy. In eō sunt īnsulae sexāgintā et ibi habitant hominēs et sexāgintā rūpibus ambitur et nīdus aquilae in ūnāquāque rūpe est et flūmina fluunt sexāgintā in eō et nōn vādit ex eō ad mare nisi ūnum flūmen, quod vocātur Lemn.

Secundum mīrāculum ōstium Trahannōnī flūminis, quia in ūnā undā īnstar montis ad sissam tegit lītora et recēdit ut cētera maria.

Tertium mīrāculum stāgnum calidum, quod est in regiōne Huich et mūrō ambītur ex latere et lapide factō et in eō vādunt hominēs per omne tempus ad lavandum et ūnīcuique, sicut placuerit illī, lavācrum sīc fiat sibi secundum voluntātem suam: sī voluerit, lavācrum frīgidum erit, sī calidum, calidum erit.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 ambitur: it is incircled; 3rd person singular present passive
 from ambiō, ambire, ambivī, ambitus
 aquilae: eagle; singular feminine genitive from aquila, aquilae
 Britanniae: of Britain (genitive singular case)
 calidum: hot, warm; singular neuter nominative from calidus,
 calida -um, calidior -or -us, calidissimus -a -um
 cētera: the other; plural neuter nominative from cēterus, cētera,
 cēterum
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 eō: in it; singular neuter ablative from is, ea, id
 erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 factō: made; singular masculine dative perfect passive participle
 from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fiat: it happens, it is; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from fio, fieri, factus sum
 flūmen: river; singular neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūmina: rivers; plural neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fluunt: they flow; 3rd person plural present active from fluō,
 fluere, flūxī, flūxus
 frīgīdum: cold; singular neuter nominative from frigidus, frigida
 -um, frigidior -or -us, frigidissimus -a -um
 habitant: they inhabit; 3rd person plural present active from
 habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātus
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 Huich: probably Hwicce, an Anglo-Saxon kingdom. The hot
 springs mentioned are possibly in Bath, Somerset. Bath has
 baths built by the Romans.
 ibi: there, then
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 instar: as big as
 insulae: islands; plural feminine nominative from insula, insulae
 lapide: stone; singular masculine ablative from lapis, lapidis
 latere: brick; singular masculine ablative from later, lateris
 lavācrum: bath; singular neuter nominative from lavācrum,
 lavācrī
 lavandum: washing; singular neuter accusative gerund from
 lavō, lavāre, lavī, lautus
 Lemn: probably River Leven, the main outflow of Loch Lomond
 litora: beaches, shores; plural neuter accusative from litus,
 litoris
 Lumonoy: probably Loch Lomond in Scotland
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 maria: seas; plural neuter nominative from mare, maris
 mirābilibus: miracles; plural ablative from mirābilis, mirābilis,
 mirābile
 mirāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from
 mirāculum, mirāculi
 montis: mountains; singular masculine genitive from mōns,
 montis
 mūrō: city wall; singular masculine ablative from mūrus, mūrī
 nīdus: nest; singular masculine nominative from nīdus, nīdi
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōn: not
 omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 ōstium: door; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstīi
 per: through
 placuerit: it will have pleased; 3rd person singular perfect
 active subjunctive from placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus
 primum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 primum
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quia: because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 recēdit: it recedes; 3rd person singular present active from
 recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rūpe: cliff; singular feminine ablative from rūpēs, rūpis
 rūpibus: cliffs; plural feminine ablative from rūpēs, rūpis
 secundum: second, following, behind
 sexāgintā: sixty
 si: if
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 sic: thus
 sicut: as, same as, like
 sissam: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I
 consulted
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, stagnī
 suam: her; singular feminine acc. from suus

sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 tegit: it covers, hides; 3rd person singular present active from
 tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus,
 temporis
 tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 Trahannōni: a river
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
 -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 undā: waves; singular feminine ablative from unda, undae
 ūnāquāque: each one; ablative from ūnusquisque
 ūnum: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um,
 prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 ut: so that
 vādīt: he goes; 3rd person singular present active from vādō,
 vādere, vāsī, -
 vādunt: they go; 3rd person plural present active from vādō,
 vādere, vāsī, -
 VII: seven
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 voluerit: he will have wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active
 subjunctive from volō, velle, voluī, -
 voluntātem: will; singular feminine accusative from voluntās,
 voluntātis

68 Quārtum mīrāculum est: fontēs in eadem inveniuntur dē salō, ā quibus fontibus sāl coquitur: inde dīversa cibāria saliuntur et nōn prope sunt marī, sed dē terrā ēmergunt.

Aliud mīrāculum et Duorig Habren, id est duo¹ rēgēs Sabrīnae. Quandō inundantur mare ad sissam in ōstium Sabrīnae, duo cumulī spūmārum congregantur sēparātīm et bellum faciunt inter sē in modum arietum et prōcēdit ūnusquisque ad alterum et collidunt sē ad invicem et iterum sēcēdit alter ab alterō et iterum prōcēdunt in ūnāquāque sissā. Hoc faciunt ab initiō mundī usque in hodiernum diem.

¹*That is, two kings of the River Severn.* The 'two kings' are the two waves that 'battle' each other in the river.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum
 alterō: the other; singular masculine ablative from alter, altera, alterum
 alterum: the other; singular neuter nominative from alter, altera, alterum
 arietum: of rams; plural masculine genitive from ariēs, arietis
 bellum: battle, war; singular neuter accusative from bellum, bellī
 cibāria: food; plural neuter nominative from cibarium, cibariī
 collidunt: they collide; 3rd person plural present active from collidō, collidere, collisī, collisus
 congregantur: they are gathered; 3rd person plural present passive from congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātus
 coquitur: it is cooked; 3rd person singular present passive from coquo, coquere, coxi, coctus
 cumuli: heaps, piles; plural masculine nominative from cumulus, cumuli
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diē
 diversa: diverse; plural neuter nominative from diversus, diversa, diversum
 duo: two
 eadem: the same (place), plural neuter accusative from idem, eadem, idem
 emergunt: they emerge, appear; 3rd person plural present active from emergō, emergere, emersī, emersus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 faciunt: they are making, they are doing; 3rd person plural present active from faciō, facere, fecī, factus
 fontēs: fountains; plural masculine nominative from fōns, fontis
 fontibus: fountains; plural masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
 hoc: this; singular neuter nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter accusative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 id: it
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 initiō: beginning, entrance; singular neuter ablative from initium, initii
 inter: between, among, during
 inundantur: they are flooded; 3rd person plural present passive from inundō, inundāre, inundāvī, inundātus
 inveniuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 invicem: alternately, mutually
 iterum: again
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 mirāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from mirāculum, mirāculi
 modum: way, manner, mode; singular masculine accusative from modus, modi
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nōn: not
 ōstium: door; singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstii
 procēdit: he proceeds; 3rd person singular present active from procēdō, procēdere, processī, processus
 procēdunt: they proceed; 3rd person plural present active from procēdō, procēdere, processī, processus
 prope: near, close
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quandō: when, because
 quārtum: for the fourth time
 quibus: what; plural ablative of qui
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative or accusative from rēx, regis
 sāl: salt; singular masculine nominative from sāl, salis
 salō: high sea; singular neuter ablative from salum, salī
 se: himself
 secēdit: it withdraws; 3rd person singular present active from secēdō, secēdere, sēcessī, sēcessus
 sed: but
 separātim: separately, apart
 spūmārum: of foam; plural feminine genitive from spūma, spūmae
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 terra: land; singular feminine nominative from terra, terrae
 Dourig Habren, Welsh name for a phenomenon where two waves collide in a certain river
 Habren: Dourig Habren, Welsh name for a phenomenon where

two waves collide in a certain river
 Sabrinae: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain.
 Sabrinae is probably in the nominative case here.
 sissa: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I consulted
 sissam: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I consulted
 ūnusquisque: each one
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until

69 Aliud mīrāculum est, id est Oper Līnn Liuān. Ōstium flūminis illius fluit in Sabrīnā et quandō Sabrīna inundātur ad sissam, et mare inundātur similiter in ōstiō suprā dictī flūminis et in stāgnō ōstiī recepitur in modum vorāginis et mare nōn vādit sūrsum et est lītus iuxtā flūmen et quamdiū Sabrīna inundātur ad sissam, istud lītus nōn tegitur et quandō recēdit mare et Sabrīna, tunc stāgnum Liuān ēructat omne quod dēvorāvit dē marī et lītus istud tegitur et īnstar montis in ūnā undā ēructat et rumpit. Et sī fuerit exercitus tōtīus regiōnis, in quā est, et dīrēxerit faciem contrā undam, et exercitum¹ trahit unda per vim hūmōre replētīs vestibus et equī similiter trahuntur. Sī autem exercitus terga versūs fuerit contrā eam, nōn nocet² eī unda et quandō recesserit mare, tōtum tunc lītus, quod unda tegit, retrō dēnūdātur et mare recēdit ab ipsō.

¹*And the wave drags the army through the strength of the liquid, drenching their clothes, and the horses are similarly dragged.* This refers to a natural phenomenon known as a tidal bore, and still occurs today in the River Severn. Videos can be found online of surfers riding a 3-foot wave produced by this tidal bore in the River Severn.

²*The wave does not hurt it (the army).* *Nocēre* takes the dative instead of the accusative.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 autem: but, however, moreover
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 de: of, from, away from, down from
 dēnūdātūr: it is uncovered; 3rd person singular present passive from dēnūdō, dēnūdāre, dēnūdāvī, dēnūdātus
 dēvorāvit: it devoured; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēvorō, dēvorāre, dēvorāvī, dēvorātus
 dictī: suprā dictī = the above said; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 dirēxerit: it will have aligned, directed; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from dirīgō, dirigere, dirēxī, dirēctus
 eam: it; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 ei: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 equi: horse; plural masculine nominative from equus, equi
 erūctat: it erupts, vomits; 3rd person singular present active from erūctō, erūctāre, erūctāvī, erūctātus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitum: army; singular masculine accusative from exercitus, exercitūs
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs
 faciem: face; singular feminine accusative from faciēs, faciēi
 fluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from fluō, fluere, fluxi, fluxus
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fuerit: it will have been; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 hūmōre: liquid; singular masculine ablative from hūmor, hūmōris
 id: it
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 instar: as big as
 inundatur: it is flooded; 3rd person singular present passive from inundō, inundāre, inundāvī, inundātus
 ipsō: itself; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 istud: that; singular neuter nominative and accusative from iste, ista, istud
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 Linn: Oper Linn Liuān, likely 'Mouth of the pool of Liuān
 litus: beach, shore; singular neuter nominative or accusative from litus, litoris
 Luan: Oper Linn Liuān, likely 'Mouth of the pool of Liuān
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
 marī: sea; singular neuter from mare, maris
 mirāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from mirāculum, mirāculi
 modum: mode, manner, way, measure, size; singular masculine accusative from modus, modi
 montis: mountains; singular masculine genitive from mōns, montis
 nocet: it harms; 3rd person singular present active from noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus
 nōn: not
 omne: all, every; singular neuter nominative or accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 Oper: Oper Linn Liuān, likely 'Mouth of the pool of Liuān
 ōstii: mouth (of the river); singular neuter genitive from ōstium, ōstii
 ōstio: mouth (of the river); singular neuter ablative from ōstium, ōstii
 ōstium: mouth (of the river); singular neuter nominative from ōstium, ōstii
 per: through
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quamdiū: as long as
 quāndō: when, because
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 recēdit: it recedes; 3rd person singular present active from recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
 recipitur: it is received; 3rd person singular present from recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus
 recesserit: it will have withdrawn; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
 regiōnis: region; singular feminine genitive from regiō, regiōnis
 replētis: having been filled; plural masculine nominative from repleō, replēre, replēvi, replētus
 retrō: behind, backwards
 rumpit: it breaks; 3rd person singular present active from rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptus
 Sabrina: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain. Sabrina

is probably in the nominative case here.

sī: if
 similiter: similarly
 sissam: rocky shore (?), this was not in any dictionary I consulted
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from stagnum, stagni
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from stagnum, stagni
 suprā: over, above, beyond, before
 sūsum: on top, upward
 tegit: it covers; 3rd person singular present active from tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus
 tegitur: it is covered; 3rd person singular present passive from tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus
 terga: back; plural neuter accusative from tergum, tergi
 tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 tōtum: whole, total; singular neuter nominative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 trahit: it draws, drags; 3rd person singular present active from trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus
 trahuntur: they are drawn, dragged; 3rd person plural present passive from trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus
 tunc: then
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, p̄mus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 undā: wave; singular feminine ablative from unda, undae
 undam: wave; singular feminine accusative from unda, undae
 vādīt: he goes; 3rd person singular present active from vādō, vādere, vāsī, -
 versus: verse, poetic line; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 vestibus: clothing; plural feminine ablative from vestis, vestis
 vim: strength; singular feminine accusative from vīs, vīs
 vorāginis: abyss, gulf, depth; singular feminine genitive from vorāgō, vorāginis

70 Est aliud mīrābile in regiōne Cinlipiūc. Est ibī fōns nōmine Finnaun Guur Helic; nōn fluit rīvus ex eō neque in eō. Vādunt hominēs piscārī ad fontem, aliī vādunt in fontem ad partem orientis et dēdūcunt piscēs ex eā parte, aliī ad dextram¹, aliī ad sinistram, ad occidentamque, et trahuntur piscēs ex eā parte. Et aliud genus piscium trahitur ex omnibus partibus. Magnum mīrābile piscēs invenīrī in fonte, dum nōn flūmen fluit in eō neque ex eō, et in eō inveniuntur quattuor genera piscium et nōn est dē magnitūdine neque dē profunditāte. Profunditās illius usque genua, vīgintī pedēs sunt in logitūdīne et lātītūdine, rīpās altās habet ex omnī parte. Iuxtā flūmen, quod vocātur Guoy, pōma inveniuntur super fraxinum in prōclīvō saltus, quī est prope ōstiō flūminis.

Est aliud mīrābile in regiōne quae vocātur Guent. Est ibī fovea, ā quā ventus īnflat per omne tempus sine intermissiōne, et quandō nōn flat ventus in tempore aestātis, dē illā foveā incessanter flat, ut nēmō possit sustinēre neque ante foveae profunditātem. Et vocātur nōmen eius Vith Guint Brittannīcō sermōne, Latīnē autem flātiō ventī. Magnum mīrābile est ventus dē terrā flāre.

¹*Others to the south (right), others to the north (left), and to the west.* Assuming a map orientation with the East to the top, which wasn't uncommon in the Middle Ages, then *dextram* and *sinistram* fit well with *occidentam*.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aestātis: summer; singular feminine genitive from aestās,
 aestātis
 alii: others; plural masculine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 altās: high; plural feminine accusative from altus -a -um
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 autem: but, however, moreover
 Brittannicō: Britannic (ablative case)
 Cinlipiuc: a region, probably in modern-day Wales
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēducunt: they lead down, escort, remove; 3rd person plural
 present active from dēducō, dēducere, dēdūxī, dēductus
 dextram: right hand, right side; singular feminine accusative
 from dexter, dextra -um, dexterior -or -us, dextimus -a -um
 dum: while, as long as, until
 ea: it; singular feminine nominative or plural neuter nom. or
 acc. from is, ea, id
 eius: his/her/its
 eō: in it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 Finnaun: Finnaun Guur Helic, a fountain or spring
 flāre: to breathe, to blow; present infinitive from flō, flāre, flāvī,
 flātus
 flat: it blows; 3rd person singular present active from flō, flāre,
 flāvī, flātus
 flātiō: blowing; singular feminine nominative from flātiō,
 flātiōnis
 fluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from fluō,
 fluere, flūxī, flūxus
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 flūminis: river; singular neuter genitive from flūmen, flūminis
 fōns: fountain; singular masculine nominative from fōns, fontis
 fonte: fountain; singular masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
 fontem: fountain; singular masculine accusative from fōns,
 fontis
 fovea: pit, pitfall; singular feminine nominative from fovea,
 foveae
 foveae: pit, pitfall; singular feminine genitive from fovea, foveae
 fraxinum: ash tree; singular feminine accusative from fraxinus,
 fraxini
 genera: types; plural neuter nominative from genus, generis
 genua: knees; plural neuter accusative from genu, genūs
 genus: type; singular neuter nominative from genus, generis
 Guent: the Kingdom of Gwent, a region in modern-day Wales
 Guint: Vith Guint, the name of a whole from which a wind
 blows; the name probably means 'wind-hole' in Welsh
 Guoy: possibly the River Wye in Wales
 Guur: Finnaun Guur Helic, a fountain or spring
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeo,
 habere, habuī, habitus
 Helic: Finnaun Guur Helic, a fountain or spring
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 ibi: there, then
 illā: that; singular feminine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incessanter: incessantly
 inflat: it blows into; 3rd person singular present active from
 inflō, inflāre, inflāvī, inflātus
 intermissiōne: intermission, interruption; singular feminine
 ablative from intermissiō, intermissiōnis
 invenīri: to be found; passive infinitive from invenio, invenire,
 inveni, inventus
 inveniuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present
 passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 Latīnē: in Latin
 lātitudīne: breadth, width, latitude; singular feminine ablative
 from lātitudō, lātitudinis
 longitūdīne: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from
 longitūdō, longitūdinis
 magnitūdīne: magnitude, greatness; singular feminine ablative
 from magnitūdō, magnitūdinis
 māgnus: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mīrābile: marvel (this is an adjective used substantively);
 singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis,
 mīrābile
 nēmō: no one; singular common nominative from nēmō, nēminis
 neque: not, not either
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not

occidentamque: and east
 omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 omni: all, every; singular feminine ablative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 omnibus: all; plural ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orientis: of the East, singular masculine genitive from oriēs,
 orientis
 ōstiō: mouth (of a river); singular neuter dative from ōstium,
 ōstii
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 partem: part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 pedēs: feet; plural masculine nominative from pēs, pedis
 per: through
 piscārī: to fish; infinitive
 piscēs: fishes; plural masculine nominative from piscis, piscis
 piscium: of fishes; plural masculine genitive from piscis, piscis
 pōma: fruit; plural neuter nominative from pōmum, pōmī
 possit: he (may) be able; 3rd person singular present active
 subjunctive from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prōclīvō: inclined towards; singular masculine ablative from
 prōclīvus, prōclīva, prōclīvum
 profunditās: depth, vastness; singular feminine nominative from
 profunditās, profunditātis
 profunditāte: depth, vastness; singular feminine ablative from
 profunditās, profunditātis
 profunditatem: depth, vastness; singular feminine accusative
 from profunditās, profunditātis
 prope: near, close
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quādo: when, because
 quattuor: 4
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 rīpās: banks, shores; plural feminine accusative from rīpa, rīpae
 rīvus: small stream; singular masculine nominative from rivus,
 rīvī
 saltūs: narrow pass, woodland; singular masculine genitive from
 saltus, saltus
 sermōne: language; singular masculine ablative from sermō,
 sermōnis
 sine: without
 sinistram: left-hand; singular feminine accusative from sinister,
 sinistra -um, sinistrior -or -us, sinistimus -a -um
 sunt: they are; 3rd person plural present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 super: above, on top of
 sustinēre: to stay, withstand; present infinitive from sustineō,
 sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus,
 temporis
 terrā: land; singular feminine ablative from terra, terrae
 trahitur: it is drawn; 3rd person singular present passive from
 trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus
 trahuntur: they are drawn, dragged; 3rd person plural present
 passive from trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 vādunt: they go; 3rd person plural present active from vādō,
 vādere, vāsi, -
 venti: come; singular masculine genitive perfect passive
 participle from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 ventus: wind; singular masculine nominative from ventus, ventī
 vīginti: 20
 Vith: Vith Guint, the name of a whole from which a wind blows;
 the name probably means 'wind-hole' in Welsh
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

71 Est aliud mīrābile in Guyr altāre¹, quod est in locō, quī dīcitur Loyngarth, quod nūtū deī fulcitur. Historia istīus altāris melius mihi vidētur nārrāre quam reticēre. Factum est autem dum sānctus Iltūtus ōrābat in spēluncā, quae est iuxtā mare, quod alluit terram suprā dictī locī, os autem spēluncae ad mare est, et ecce nāvis nāvigābat ad sē dē marī et duo virī nāvigantēs eam et corpus sānctī hominis erat cum illīs in nāvī et altāre² suprā faciem eius, quod nūtū deī fulciēbātur et prōcessit homō deī obviam illīs et corpus sānctī hominis et altāre īnsēparābiliter suprā faciem sānctī corporis stābat. Et dīxērunt ad sānctum Iltūtum: ille homō deī commendāvit nōbīs, ut dēdūcerēmus illum ad tē et sepelīrēmus eum tēcum et nōmen eius nōn revēlēs ūllō hominī, ut nōn iūrent³ per sē hominēs.

¹*There is another marvel in Guyr, an altar, which is in that place which is called Loyngarth, which is supported by the will of God.* It appears, from the next page, that the altar levitates in the air.

²*And an alter above his face.* We are told later in this sentence that it 'stands inseparably from his face', so apparently the altar levitates above the man's body, wherever the body is moved.

³*That men may not swear (oaths) by him.* The holy man wanted to prevent a cultic practice from building up around him.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
alluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from alluō, alluere, alluī, -
altāre: altar; singular neuter nominative from altāre, altāris
autem: but, however, moreover
commendāvit: he entrusted, committed, recommended; 3rd person singular perfect active from commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātus
corporis: body; singular neuter genitive from corpus, corporis
corpus: body; singular neuter nominative from corpus, corporis
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dēdūcerēmus: we had lead down, escorted, removed; 1st person plural imperfect active subjunctive from dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductus
Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dictī: suprā dictī = the above-said; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dixerunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dum: while, as long as, until
duo: two
eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
ecce: Look! Behold!
eius: his/her/its
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
faciem: face; singular feminine accusative from faciēs, faciē
factum: factum est = it happened; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from fiō, fierī, factus
fulciēbātur: it was supported; 3rd person singular imperfect passive from fulciō, fulcire, fulsi, fultus
fulcitur: it is supported; 3rd person singular present passive from fulciō, fulcire, fulsi, fultus
Guyr: likely a location in Wales
historia: history, story; singular feminine nominative from historia, historiae
homines: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō, hominis
hominī: man; singular masculine dative from homō, hominis
hominis: of the man; singular masculine genitive from homō, hominis
homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
illum: that; singular feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
Iltūtum: Saint Iltud Farchog, a Welsh saint
Iltūtus: Saint Iltud Farchog, a Welsh saint
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
insēparābiliter: inseparably
istius: of this; singular genitive from iste, ista, istud
iurent: they might swear; 3rd person plural present active subjunctive from iuro, jurare, juravi, juratus
iuxtā: near, nearly
loci: place; singular masculine genitive from locus, locī
locō: place; singular masculine dative from locus, locī
Loyngarth: likely a location in Wales
mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
melius: better, comparative adverb from bonus
mihi: to me;(pronoun)
mīrābile: marvel; this is an adjective used substantially, singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile
nārrāre: to narrate, to tell about; present infinitive from nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus
nāvī: boat; singular feminine ablative from nāvis, nāvis
nāvigābat: he was sailing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
nāvigantēs: sailing; plural common nominative present participle from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
nāvis: boat; singular feminine nominative from nāvis, nāvis
nōbīs: us; singular dative or ablative from ego
nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative or accusative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from nūtus, nūtus
obviam: in the path
orābat: he was praying; 3rd person singular imperfect active from orō, orāre, orāvī, orātus
os: bone; singular neuter nominative from ōs, ōris

per: through
processit: he proceeded, advanced; 3rd person singular perfect active from procēdō, procēdere, processī, processus
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
quam: how? how much?
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
reticēre: to keep silent; present infinitive from reticēō, reticēre, reticūī, -
revēlēs: you reveal; 2nd person singular present active subjunctive from revēlō, revēlāre, revēlāvī, revēlātus
sānctī: holy
sānctum: holy, saint
sānctus: holy, saint
se: himself
sepelirēmus: we buried; 1st person plural imperfect active subjunctive from sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
spēlunca: cave; singular feminine nominative from spēlunca, spēluncae
spēluncae: cave; singular feminine genitive from spēlunca, spēluncae
stābat: it was remaining, being; 3rd person singular imperfect active from stō, stāre, steti, status
suprā: over, above, beyond, before
tē: to you, accusative from tu
terram: land
ūllō: any; singular masculine dative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen -ius)
ut: so that
vidētur: he appears; 3rd person singular present passive from videō, vidēre, vidī, visus
virī: men; plural masculine nominative from vir, virī

Et sepeliērunt eum et post sepultūram illī duo virī reversī sunt ad nāvim et nāvigāvērunt. At ille sānctus Iltūtus ecclēsiam fundāvit circā corpus sānctī hominis et circā altāre et manet usque in hodiernum diem altāre nūtū deī fultum. Vēnit quīdam rēgulus¹, ut proberet portāns virgam in manū suā; curvāvit eam circā altāre et tenuit ambābus manibus virgam ex utrāque parte et trāxit ad sē et sīc vērītātem illīus reī probāvit et ille posteā per mēsem integrum² nōn vīxit. Alter vērō sub altāre aspexit et aciem³ oculōrum eius āmīsīt et ante mēsem integrum vītā finīvit.

¹A certain prince came, carrying a stick in his hand that he might test (the levitation of the altar); he bent it (the stick) around the altar and held the stick with both hands on both parts (ends) of the stick and pulled it to himself and thus he proved the truth of this thing.

²And that one (the prince who tested the altar with the stick) after a whole month didn't live. The implication is that he died from performing the test.

³Another man looked under the altar and lost the sharpness of his eyes and his life finished before a full month. This other man went blind and died.

aciem: sharpness; singular feminine accusative from aciēs, aciēi
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 altāre: altar; singular neuter nominative from altāre, altāris
 alter: the other; singular masculine nominative from alter, altera, alterum
 ambabus: both; two of a pair considered together; plural feminine ablative from ambō
 āmisit: he lost; 3rd person singular perfect active from āmittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus
 ante: before, in front, forwards
 aspēxit: he looked at, contemplated; 3rd person singular perfect active from aspiciō, aspicere, aspēxi, aspectus
 at: and
 circā: around, about, concerning
 corpus: body, flesh; singular neuter accusative from corpus, corporis
 curvāvit: he bent, curved; 3rd person singular perfect active from curvō, curvāre, curvāvī, curvātus
 Deī: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
 duo: two
 eam: her; singular feminine accusative from is, ea, id
 ecclēsiam: church; singular feminine accusative from ecclēsia, ecclēsiae
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 ex: out of, from
 finivit: he finished; 3rd person singular perfect active from finīō, finire, finivī, finitus
 fultum: having been supported; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from fulciō, fulcīre, fulsī, fultus
 fundāvit: he founded; 3rd person singular perfect active from fundō, fundāre, fundāvī, fundātus
 hodiernum: today; singular neuter nominative from hodiernus, hodierna, hodiernum
 hominis: of a person; singular masculine genitive from homō, hominis
 ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illi: those; plural masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 Iltūtus: Saint Illtud Farchog, a Welsh saint
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 integrum: whole, intact, untouched; singular neuter nominative from integer, integra -um, integrior -or -us, integerrimus -a -um
 manet: he remains; 3rd person singular present active from maneo, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 manibus: hands; plural feminine ablative from manus, manūs
 manū: hand; singular feminine ablative from manus, manūs
 mensem: month; singular masculine accusative from mēnsis, mēnsis
 nāvigāverunt: they sailed; 3rd person plural perfect active from nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus
 nāvim: boat; singular feminine accusative from nāvis, nāvis
 nōn: not
 nūtū: command, will, pleasure; singular masculine ablative from nūtus, nūtūs
 oculōrum: eyes; plural masculine genitive from oculus, oculi
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 per: through
 portans: carrying; singular nominative present participle from porto, portare, portavi, portatus
 post: behind, after, since
 postea: thereafter, later
 probāvit: he tested, proved; 3rd person singular perfect active from probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus
 properet: he hurries; 3rd person singular present active subjunctive from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 rēgulus: prince; singular masculine nominative from Regulus, Reguli
 rei: thing; singular feminine genitive from rēs, rei
 reversi: reversi sunt = they returned; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from revertor, reverti, reversus
 sancti: holy
 sanctus: holy, saint
 se: himself
 sepelivērunt: they buried; 3rd person plural perfect active from sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
 sepultūram: burial; singular feminine accusative future participle from sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
 sic: thus
 sua: her/its; sing. fem. nom. or abl. or neuter nom. or acc. from suus
 sub: below, under
 tenuit: he held; 3rd person singular perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
 trāxit: he drew; 3rd person singular perfect active from trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 ut: so that
 utrā: either; singular feminine ablative from uter, utra, utrum
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 vēritātem: truth; singular feminine accusative from vēritās, vēritātis
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 virgam: stick; singular feminine accusative from virga, virgae
 viri: men; plural masculine nominative from virus, viri
 vītam: life; singular feminine accusative from vīta, vītae
 vīxit: he lived; 3rd person singular perfect active from vīvō, vivere, vixi, victus

72 Est aliud mīrābile in suprā dictā regiōne Guent. Est ibī fōns iuxtā vallum puteī Mouric et lignum in mediō fontis et lavant hominēs manūs suās cum faciēbus suīs et lignum¹ sub pedibus suīs habent, quandō lavant. Nam et egō probāvī et vīdī. Quandō mare inundātur, ad mallīnam² extenditur Sabrīna super omnem maritimam et tegit et usque ad fontem prōdūcitur et implētur fōns dē sissā Sabrīnae et trahit lignum sēcum usque ad mare magnum et per spatium trium diērum in mare invertitur et in quārtō diē in suprā dictō fonte invenītur. Factum est autem, ut ūnus dē rūsticīs sepelīret eum in terrā ad probandum, et in quārtō diē inventus est in fonte et ille rūsticus, quī eum abscondit et sepelīvit, dēfūctus est ante finem mēnsis.

¹*And they have the wood under their feet, when they wash.* This wood moves around magically, as described in the following sentences, so it appears that when you get in the pool, the wood moves to be beneath your feet.

²*When it (the fountain) is flooded by the sea, and to the wetlands the River Severn is extended over all the shore and (the water) covers (the well) and it (the water) is lead up to the fountain and the fountain is filled with the silt of the River Severn and it (the water) draws the wood with it out to the large sea, and for the space of three days it (the wood) is turned about in the sea and on the fourth day it is found (again) in the above-said fountain.* The flooding is probably the tidal floods that occur in the River Severn. Note that *mallīnam* and *sissā* are not standard Latin words, so I have glossed them with a meaning that is based on the context.

abscondit: he hid; 3rd person singular present active from abscondō, abscondere, abscondī, absconditus
ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
ante: before, in front, forwards
autem: but, however, moreover
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dēfūctus: dēfūctus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from dēfungor, dēfungī, dēfūctus
dictā: suprā dictā = the above-said; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dictō: suprā dictō = the above-said; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diē
diērum: days; plural common genitive from diēs, diē
egō: I
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
extenditur: it is extended; 3rd person singular passive present from extendō, extendere, extendi, extentus
faciēbus: faces; plural feminine ablative from faciēs, faciē
factum: factum est = it happened; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from fiō, fieri, factus
finem: boundary, end, limit; singular common accusative from finis, finis
fōns: fountain; singular masculine nominative from fōns, fontis
fonte: fountain; singular masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
fontem: fountain; singular masculine accusative from fōns, fontis
fontis: fountain; singular masculine genitive from fōns, fontis
Guent: the Kingdom of Gwent, a region in modern-day Wales
habent: they have; 3rd person plural present active from habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus
hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō, hominis
ibī: there, then
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
implētur: it is filled up; 3rd person singular present passive from impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inundatur: it is flooded; 3rd person singular present passive from inundō, inundāre, inundāvī, inundātus
invenitur: it is found; 3rd person singular present passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
inventus: inventus est = it was found; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
invertitur: it is turned upside down; 3rd person singular present passive from invertō, invertere, invertī, inversus
iuxtā: near, nearly
lavant: they wash; 3rd person plural present active from lavō, lavāre, lavī, lautus
lignum: wood; singular neuter nominative from lignum, lignī
māgnū: large; singular neuter nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
mallinam: wetlands (?), this is not a standard Latin word
manūs: hand; plural feminine accusative from manus, manūs
mare: sea; singular neuter nominative from mare, maris
maritimam: maritime, things relating to the sea; singular feminine accusative from maritimus, maritima, maritimum
mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media, medium
mēnsis: month; singular masculine genitive from mēnsis, mēnsis
mīrābile: marvel; singular neuter nominative from mīrābilis, mīrābilis, mīrābile
Mouric: of Mouric. To whom this name refers is unknown
nam: yes, truly
omnem: all, every; singular common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
pedibus: feet; plural masculine ablative from pēs, pedis
per: through
probandum: testing; singular neuter nominative gerund from probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus
probāvī: I approved, commended; 1st person singular perfect active from probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus
prōdūcitur: it is lead forward; 3rd person singular present passive from prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductus
putei: of the well; singular masculine genitive from puteus, putei
quandō: when, because
quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor, quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
rūsticis: rural persons, locals, ; plural ablative from rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum
rūsticus: rural person, local; singular masculine nominative from rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum
Sabrina: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain. Sabrinæ is probably in the nominative case here.
Sabrinæ: the River Severn, the longest river in Britain. Sabrinæ is probably in the genitive case here.
sēcum: with oneself
sepeliret: he buried; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
sepelivit: he buried; 3rd person singular perfect active from sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
sissa: silt (?), this is not a standard Latin word
spatium: space; singular neuter accusative from spatium, spatī
suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
sub: below, under
suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
super: above, on top of
suprā: over, above, beyond, before
tegit: it covers; 3rd person singular present active from tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus
terrā: land; singular feminine ablative from terra, terrae
trahit: it draws, drags; 3rd person singular present active from trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus
trium: of three; plural genitive from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
ūnus: one
ūsq̄ue: until, all the way, up until
ut: so that
vallum: wall, rampart; singular neuter nominative from vallum, valli
vīdī: I saw; 1st person singular perfect active from videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus

73 Est aliud mīrāculum in rēgiōn quae vocātur Ercing. Habētur ibī sepulchrum iuxtā fontem, quī cognōminātur Licat Anir, et virī nōmen, quī sepultus est in tumulō, sīc vocābātur Anir: filius Arthūrī mīlitis erat et ipse¹ occīdit eum ibīdem et sepelīvit. Et veniunt hominēs ad mēnsūrandum tumulum in longitūdine aliquandō sex pedēs, aliquandō novem, aliquandō duodecim, aliquandō quindecim. In quā mēnsūrā mētiēris eum in istā vice, iterum nōn inveniēs eum in ūnā mēnsūrā, et ego sōlus² probāvī.

¹*He was the son of the soldier Arthur and he himself killed him in the same place and buried him.* Presumably, this means that Arthur killed his son Anir and buried him (Anir) in the tomb.

²*And I myself tested (it).* *Sōlus* means 'alone' or 'solitary', but 'myself' appears to be the meaning that the author was going for here.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquandō: some day
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 Anir: Licat Anir, the name of a fountain
 Arthuri: of Arthur
 cognominatur: is named; 3rd person singular present passive
 from cognomino, cognominare, cognominavi, cognominatus
 duodecim: twelve
 ego: I; (pronoun)
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 Ercing: a region
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 fontem: fountain; singular masculine accusative from fons,
 fontis
 habētur: it is had; 3rd person singular present passive from
 habeo, habere, habui, habitus
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homo,
 hominis
 ibi: there, then
 ibidem: in the same place
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 invenies: you will find; 2nd person singular future active from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 ipse: he himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 istā: that; singular feminine ablative from iste, ista, istud
 iterum: again
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 Licat: Licat Anir, the name of a fountain
 longitudine: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from
 longitudo, longitudinis
 mēnsūra: measure; singular feminine nominative future
 participle from metior, metiri, mensus sum
 mēnsurandum: measuring; singular neuter nominative gerund
 from mēnsūrō, mēnsūrāre, mēnsūrāvī, mēnsūrātus
 mētiēris: you will measure; infinitive
 militis: of a soldier; singular masculine genitive from miles,
 militis
 mīrāculum: miracle; singular neuter nominative from
 mirāculum, mirāculi
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 novem: nine; from novem, nonus -a -um, noveni -ae -a, novie (n)s
 occīdit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect from occīdō,
 occīdere, occīdī, occīsus
 pedēs: feet; plural masculine accusative from pēs, pedis
 probāvī: I tested; 1st person singular perfect active from probō,
 probāre, probāvi, probātus
 quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quīndecim: fifteen; from quīndecim, quīndecimus -a -um,
 quīndeci -ae -a, quīndecie (n)s
 sepelivit: he buried; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 sepeliō, sepelire, sepelivī, sepultus
 sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter nominative from
 sepulchrum, sepulchrī
 sepultus: sepultus est = he was buried; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from sepeliō, sepelire,
 sepelivī, sepultus
 sex: six
 sic: thus
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla,
 solum (gen -ius)
 tumulō: mound, hill; singular masculine ablative from tumulus,
 tumuli
 tumulum: mound, hill; singular masculine accusative from
 tumulus, tumuli
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a
 -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 veniunt: they come; 3rd person plural present active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 vice: time, turn; singular feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
 virī: of the man; singular neuter genitive from virus, viri
 vocābātur: it was being called; 3rd person singular imperfect
 passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

74 Est aliud mīrābile in regiōne quae vocātur Cereticiaun. Est ibī mōns, quae cognōminātur Cruc Maur, et est sepulchrum in cacūmine illius et omnis homō quicumque¹ vēnerit ad sepulchrum et extenderit sē iuxtā illud, quamvīs brevis fuerit, in ūnā longitūdine invenītur sepulchrum et homō, et sī fuerit homō brevis et parvus, similiter et longitūdinem sepulchrī iuxtā statūram hominis invenītur. Et sī fuerit longus atque prōcērus, etiam sī fuisset in longitūdine quattuor cubitōrum, iuxtā statūram ūnīuscuiusque hominī sīc tumulus reperītur. Et omni² peregrīnus taediōsusque homō trēs flectiōnēs flectāverit iuxtā illud, nōn erit super sē usque ad diem mortis suae et nōn gravābitur iterum ūllō taediō quam abīssset sōlus in extrēmīs finibus cosmī.

¹And every man whosoever will come to the grave and lay (extend) himself next to it, however short he be, in one length will be found the grave and the man (they are the same length) and if the man will be short and small, similarly the length of the grave is found to be close to the stature of the man. This is similar to the grave in the previous account, except this grave changes to match the size of whomever is measuring it.

²And to every pilgrim and tired man who bows three times next to it, (the tiredness) will not be upon him until the day of his death and (the man) will not be weighed down again by any tiredness even (to the extent that) as if he went out alone to the ends of the universe.

abisset: he went off; be changed; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from abeo, abire, abiī, abitus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 atque: and
 brevis: short; singular common nominative from brevis, breve, brevior -or -us, brevissimus -a -um
 cacūmine: peak, extremity; singular neuter ablative from cacūmen, cacūminis
 Cereticiā: the name of a region
 cognominat: it is named; 3rd person singular present passive from cognomino, cognominare, cognominavi, cognominatus
 cosmī: universe; singular masculine genitive from cosmos, cosmī
 Cruc: Crux Maur, the name of a mountain
 cubitōrum: of cubits; plural neuter genitive from cubitus, cubitī
 diem: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diē
 erit: he will be; 3rd person singular future active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 etiam: still
 extenderit: he will have extended; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from extendō, extendere, extendī, extensus
 extrēmīs: limits, outsides, ends; plural masculine ablative from extremus, extremi
 finibus: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common ablative from finis, finis
 flectaverit: he will bow
 flectiōnēs: bows;
 fuerit: he will have been; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 fuisset: he (might) have had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 gravābitur: he will be burdened; 3rd person singular future passive from gravō, gravāre, gravāvī, gravātus
 hominī: person, man; singular masculine dative from homō, hominis
 hominis: of a person; singular masculine genitive from homō, hominis
 homō: person; singular masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 ibī: there, then
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illud: that; singular neuter nominative or accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 invenitur: it is found; 3rd person singular present passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 iterum: again
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 longitudine: length, longitude; singular feminine ablative from longitūdō, longitūdinis
 longitudinem: length, longitude; singular feminine accusative from longitūdō, longitūdinis
 longus: long, far; singular masculine nominative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
 Maur: Crux Maur, the name of a mountain
 mirābile: marvel; singular neuter nominative from mirābilis, mirābilis, mirābile
 mōns: mountain; singular masculine nominative from mōns, montis
 mortis: death; singular feminine genitive from mors, mortis
 nōn: not
 omni: all, every; plural masculine nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 parvus: small; singular masculine nominative from parvus, parva -um, minor -or -us, minimus -a -um
 peregrinus: traveler; singular masculine nominative from peregrinus, peregrina, peregrinum
 prōcērus: elongated, long; singular masculine nominative from prōcērus, prōcēra -um, prōcērior -or -us, prōcērissimus -a -um
 quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
 quam: even, to the extent that (adverb)
 quamvis: as much, as much as one wants, however
 quattuor: 4
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quicumque: whosoever
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 reperitur: it is discovered, found; 3rd person singular present passive from reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus
 se: himself
 sepulchrī: of the grave; singular neuter genitive from sepulchrum, sepulchrī
 sepulchrum: grave; singular neuter nominative or accusative from sepulchrum, sepulchrī
 sī: if
 sic: thus
 similiter: similarly
 sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla, sōlum (gen -ius)
 statūram: stature; singular feminine accusative future participle from stō, stāre, steti, status
 suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or plural feminine nom. or voc. from suus
 super: above, on top of
 taediō: weariness, tedium; singular neuter ablative from taedium, taediī
 taediōsus: tedious, wearisome; singular masculine nominative from taedium, taedi(i)
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tumulus: mound, hill; singular masculine nominative from tumulus, tumuli
 ūllō: any; singular masculine ablative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen -ius)
 ūnā: one; singular feminine ablative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 ūniuscuiusque: of each one; genitive from ūnusquisque
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vēnerit: he will have come; 3rd person singular perfect active subjunctive from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

75 Primum mīrāculum¹ est lītus sine marī.

Secundum mīrāculum est ibī mōns quī gyrātur tribus vicibus in annō.

Tertium mīrāculum vadum² est ibī: quandō inundātur mare et ipse inundātur, et
quandō dēcrēscit mare et ipse minuitur.

Quartum mīrāculum est lapis quī ambulat³ in nocturnīs temporibus super vallem

Citheinn, et prōiectus est ōlim in vorāgine Cereuus, quī est in mediō pelagī quod

vocātur Mēne, et in crāstinō super rīpam suprā dictae vallis inventus est sine dubiō.

¹Here begins another list of marvels, giving the feel that the author compiled together two already-existing lists of marvels. *Nennius Interpretātus* titles these as marvels from the Isle of Man.

²The third miracle is a shallows (or a ford) there: when the sea is flooded it itself is flooded, and when the sea decreases it itself is diminished. Presumably this shallows doesn't appear connected to the sea, making the synchronicity appear marvelous.

³It's possible that the rock is moved around by strong tides. There may also be an allusion here to the idea that a rock followed the Israelites around in the wilderness, giving them water. This idea is alluded to by Paul in 1 Corinthians 10:4 καὶ πάντες τὸ αὐτὸ πνευματικὸν ἔπιον πόμα· ἔπινον γὰρ ἐκ πνευματικῆς ἀκολουθοῦσης πέτρας, ἡ πέτρα δὲ ἦν ὁ Χριστός (and all drank the same spiritual drink: for they drank of the spiritual rock following (them), and the rock was Christ).

ambulat: he walks; 3rd person singular present active from
 ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātus
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Cereus: the name of a whirlpool
 Citheinn: the name of a valley
 crāstinō: tomorrow; singular masculine ablative from crāstinus,
 crāstina, crāstinum
 dēcrēscit: it decreased; 3rd person singular present active from
 dēcrēscō, dēcrēscere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus
 dictae: suprā dictae = the above-said; singular feminine genitive
 perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dīxī, dictus
 dubiō: doubt; singular masculine ablative from dubius, dubia,
 dubium
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 gyrātur: it is encircled; 3rd person singular present passive
 from gyrō, gyrāre, gyrāvī, gyrātus
 ibī: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inundātur: it is flooded; 3rd person singular present passive
 from inundō, inundāre, inundāvī, inundātus
 inventus: inventus est = it was found; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from inveniō,
 invenire, invēnī, inventus
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 lapis: stone; singular masculine nominative from lapis, lapidis
 litus: beach, shore; singular neuter nominative or accusative
 from litus, litoris
 mare: sea; singular neuter nominative or accusative from mare,
 maris
 marī: sea; singular neuter ablative from mare, maris
 mē: to me, accusative from ego
 mediō: middle; singular masculine ablative from medius, media,
 medium
 minuitur: it is diminished; 3rd person singular present passive
 from minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus
 mīrāculum: marvel; singular neuter nominative from mīrāculum,
 mīrāculī
 mōns: mountain; singular masculine nominative from mōns,
 montis
 nocturnīs: nocturnal; plural ablative from nocturnus, nocturna,
 nocturnum
 ōlim: one day, once upon a time
 pelagī: of the sea; singular neuter genitive from pelagus, pelagī
 prīmum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prima,
 primum
 prōiectus: prōiectus est = it was thrown down; 3rd person
 singular perfect from prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectus
 quāndō: when, because
 quārtum: for the fourth time
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rīpam: bank, shore; singular feminine accusative from rīpa,
 rīpae
 secundum: second
 sine: without
 super: above, on top of
 suprā: above
 temporibus: of times, of periods; plural neuter ablative from
 tempus, temporis
 tertium: third; singular neuter nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 vadum: shallows; singular neuter nominative from vadum, vadī
 vallem: valley; singular feminine accusative from valles, vallis
 vallis: valley; singular feminine genitive from vallis, vallis
 vicibus: times; plural feminine ablative from vicis, vicis
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 vorāgine: whirlpool; singular feminine ablative from vorāgō,
 vorāginis

76 Est ibi stāgnū quod vocātur Luchlein, quattuor circulis ambītur. Prīmō circulō gronna¹ stannī ambītur, secundō circulō gronna plumbī ambītur, tertiō circulō gronna ferrī ambītur, quārtō circulō gronna āeris ambītur, et in eō stāgnō multae margaritae inveniuntur, quās pōnunt rēgēs in auribus suis.

Est aliud stāgnū quī facit ligna dūrēscere in lapidēs. Hominēs autem fingunt ligna et postquam fōrmāverint, prōiciunt in stāgnō, et manet in eō usque ad caput annī et in capite annī lapis reperiētur: et vocātur Luch Echach.

¹*Gronna* is not a Latin word. By context it appears to mean a ring, wall, ridges, or ditches.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 āeris: copper; singular neuter genitive from aes, aeris
 aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 ambītur: it is incircled; 3rd person singular present passive
 from ambiō, ambīre, ambīvī, ambītus
 annī: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, annī
 auribus: ears; plural feminine ablative from auris, auris
 autem: but, however, moreover
 capite: the head of the year; singular neuter ablative from
 caput, capitis
 caput: head; singular neuter nominative from caput, capitis
 circulis: circle, ring; plural masculine ablative from circulus,
 circuli
 circulō: circle, ring; singular masculine ablative from circulus,
 circuli
 dūrēscere: to become hard
 Echach: Luch Echach, the lake that turns wood into stone
 eo: in it; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 facit: he makes; 3rd person singular present active from faciō,
 facere, fēcī, factus
 ferri: of iron; singular masculine genitive from ferrum, ferrī
 fingunt: they mold, form, create; 3rd person plural present
 active from fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus
 fōrmāverint: they will have formed; 3rd person plural perfect
 active subjunctive from fōrmō, fōrmāre, fōrmāvī, fōrmātus
 gronna: ridges (?), circles (?). This is not a Latin word.
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 ibi: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inveniuntur: they are discovered; 3rd person plural present
 passive from invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 lapidēs: stones; plural masculine accusative from lapis, lapidis
 lapis: stone; singular masculine nominative from lapis, lapidis
 ligna: wood; plural neuter accusative from lignum, ligni
 Luch: Luch Echach, the lake that turns wood into stone
 Luchlein: the name of the lake
 manet: he remains; 3rd person singular present active from
 maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 margaritae: pearl; plural feminine nominative from margarīta,
 margaritae
 multae: many; singular feminine genitive from multus, multa
 -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 plumbi: of lead; singular neuter genitive from plumbum, plumbī
 pōnunt: they place; 3rd person plural present from pōnō,
 pōnere, posuī, positus
 postquam: since, since then, after
 primō: first; singular masculine ablative from prīmus, prīma,
 prīmum
 prōiciunt: they throw down; 3rd person plural present active
 from proicio, proicere, projecī, projectus
 quartō: fourth; singular masculine ablative from quattuor,
 quartus -a -um, quaterni -ae -a, -
 quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
 quattuor: 4
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 reperiētur: will be discovered, found out; 3rd person singular
 future passive from reperio, reperire, repperī, repertus
 secundō: second
 stagnō: swamp, pool; singular neuter ablative from stagnum,
 stagnī
 stagnum: swamp, pool; singular neuter nominative from
 stagnum, stagnī
 stanni: tin, or an alloy of silver and lead; singular neuter
 genitive from stannum, stanni
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 tertiō: third; singular masculine ablative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Bibliography

- "Historia Brittōnum." *Chronica Minora Saec. IV. V. VI. VII.*, edited by Theodor Mommsen, vol. 3, Weidmann, 1898, pp. 111–219, <https://archive.org/details/chronicaminorasa13momm/page/n13/mode/2up>
- Nearing, Homer. "The Legend of Julius Caesar's British Conquest." *PMLA* 64, no. 4 (1949): 889–929. <https://doi.org/10.2307/459639>.
- Thomas, Rebecca. *History and Identity in Early Medieval Wales*. Boydell & Brewer, 2022. <https://doi.org/10.2307/j.ctv24cns98>
- "Unpublished Geraldine Documents: The Whyte Knight." *The Journal of the Royal Historical and Archaeological Association of Ireland*, vol. 5, no. 50, 1882, pp. 640–730. <https://www.jstor.org/stable/25506830>.

